

CIRCUMPOLAR MILITARY FACILITIES OF THE ARCTIC FIVE

Ernie Regehr, O.C. Senior Fellow in Arctic Security and Defence The Simons Foundation

and

Michelle Jackett, M.A.

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five

Introduction

This compilation of current military facilities in the circumpolar region¹ continues to be offered as an aid to addressing a key question posed by the Canadian Senate more than five years ago: "Is the [Arctic] region again becoming militarized?"² If anything, that question has become more interesting and relevant in the intervening years, with commentators divided on the meaning of the demonstrably accelerated military developments in the Arctic – some arguing that they are primarily a reflection of increasing military responsibilities in aiding civil authorities in surveillance and search and rescue, some noting that Russia's increasing military presence is consistent with its need to respond to increased risks of things like illegal resource extraction, terrorism, and disasters along its frontier and the northern sea route, and others warning that the Arctic could indeed be headed once again for direct strategic confrontation.³ While a simple listing of military bases, facilities, and equipment, either based in or available for deployment in the Arctic Region, is not by itself an answer to the question of militarization, an understanding of the nature and pace of development of military infrastructure in the Arctic is nevertheless essential to any informed consideration of the changing security dynamics of the Arctic.

What follows relies on a broad range of media, government, academic, and research centre sources, all of which are indicated in the footnotes.⁴ This paper is regarded as a "work in progress" and continues to be updated as new information and changes in military posture and engagement relative to the Arctic become available.

Comments, corrections, further information, and suggestions for additional sources are all most welcome. Please send any such comments, corrections, and additions to:

Ernie Regehr Senior Fellow in Arctic Security and Defence The Simons Foundation Mobile: 519-591-4421 Home Office: 519-579-4735 Email: <u>eregehr@uwaterloo.ca</u>

² Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," The Honourable Pamela Wallin, Chair; The Honourable Romeo Dallaire, Deputy Chair, March 2011. <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca/Content/SEN/Committee/403/defe/rep/rep07mar11-e.pdf</u>

⁴ Of particular initial value have been and remain the following:

Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

Defence Watch, the column/blog of David Pugliese in the Ottawa Citizen. http://ottawacitizen.com/category/news/defence-watch

http://www.parl.gc.ca/Content/SEN/Committee/403/defe/rep/rep07mar11-e.pdf

¹ The current list is confined to the five Arctic Ocean states, but the intention is to expand it to include all the states of the Arctic Council.

³ These perspectives, for example, are reflected in four recent papers from the Arctic Institute linked to a June 15 discussion in Washington on circumpolar security cooperation. <u>http://www.thearcticinstitute.org</u>

Huebert, Rob, "The Newly Emerging Arctic Security Environment," March 2010, Canadian Defence and Foreign Affairs Institute. http://www.cdfai.org/PDF/The%20Newly%20Emerging%20Arctic%20Security%20Environment.pdf

Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," The Honourable Pamela Wallin, Chair; The Honourable Romeo Dallaire, Deputy Chair, March 2011.

Siemon T. Wezeman, "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012. http://books.sipri.org/product_info?c_product_id=442

QUICK LINKS:

Circumpolar Military Facilities of <u>CANADA</u>	Page 6
Circumpolar Military Facilities of the USA	Page 34
Circumpolar Military Facilities of <u>RUSSIA</u>	Page 47
Circumpolar Military Facilities of <u>NORWAY</u>	Page 72
Circumpolar Military Facilities of <u>DENMARK</u>	Page 80
Joint Exercises	Page 84
Arctic Forums	Page 89
Other Projects Involving the Arctic	Page 93

Contents

CANADA		6
1.	Security Assets based in the North for Operations in the North	6
	1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)	6
	1.2 Equipment	8
	1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)	11
	1.4 Policy Units and Regulators	14
2.	Security Assets based in the South for Operations in the North	15
	2.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc)	15
	2.2 Equipment	15
	2.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)	30
3.	Recurring Operations and Exercises	31
U	SA	34
1.	Security Assets available for Operations in the North	34
	1.1 Bases	34
	1.2 Equipment	38
	1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)	42
2.	Recurring Operations and Exercises	44
R	USSIA	47
1.	Security Assets available for Operations in the North	47
	1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)	47
	1.2 Equipment	51
	1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)	67
2.	Recurring Operations and Exercises	69

NORWAY		72
1.	Security Assets available for Operations in the North	72
	1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc)	72
	1.2 Equipment	74
	1.2 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)	78
2.	Recurring Operations and Exercises	79
DENMARK		
1.	Security Assets available for Operations in the North	80
	1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)	80
	1.2 Equipment	80
	1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)	82
2.	Recurring Operations and Exercises	83
JOINT EXERCISES		84
	Exercise Amalgam Dart	84
	Operation Arctic Anvil	84
	Operation Arctic Chinook	84
	Arctic Council SAR Table Top Exercise	84
	Exercise Barents Rescue	85
	CTBTO – The Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty Organization	85
	Operation Cold Response	85
	Operation FRUKUS	86
	Forward Joint Navy Exercise: U.S., Russia, and Norway	86
	Forward Rosneft Arctic Projects	86
	Greenland SAR Exercise	86
	Iceland Airborne Surveillance	86
	Joint Tabletop Review for Crystal Serenity's Arctic voyage	87

Operation NANOOK	87
Northern Eagle Naval Exercises	87
Exercise Polar Roar	87
Exercise POMOR	87
US Air National Guard exercise in Finland	88
Operation Vigilant Eagle	88
Operation Vigilant Shield 17	88
ARCTIC FORUMS	89
The Arctic Circle	89
Arctic Coast Guard Forum	89
Arctic Economic Council	90
Arctic Five	90
Arctic Frontiers	91
International Cooperative Engagement Program for Polar Research (ICE-PPR	91
Northern Forum	92
OTHER PROJECTS INVOLVING THE ARCTIC	
Arctic Fibre	93
China and the Arctic	93
European Union: "France wants EU Empire to Expand into Arctic Circle"	93
IMO: Adopts Polar Code Safety Requirements	94
IMO Arctic Training	94
Interactive Arctic Risk Map	94
Japan and the Arctic:	94
Japan: Independent underwater vehicle Urashima developed by JAMSTEC	94
Robot Army to Study the Arctic	94

CANADA

1. Security Assets based in the North for Operations in the North

1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)

Yellowknife, Northwest Territories

- Joint Taskforce North (JTFN)⁵
- 1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group (under JTFN)⁶
- 440 Transport Squadron (under JTFN)⁷

Whitehorse, Yukon

• JTFN detachment⁸

Alert, Nunavut

- Canadian Forces Station (CFS) Alert⁹, open since the late 1950s
- Usually approximately 25 Canadian Forces personnel stationed there, plus 30 civilian support personnel and up to four Environment Canada staff
- DND planning \$13M-\$15M in energy efficiency upgrades at Alert, along with six other bases across Canada, making total investments in energy efficient updates approximately \$100 million to \$175 million.¹⁰

Eureka, Nunavut

- A link between Alert and Ottawa for the High Arctic Data Communications System II (HADCS II) on Ellesmere Island, which "provides secure data, telephone, fax, DWAN, Internet communications between CFS Alert and Ottawa":
 - A chain of six unmanned line-of-sight microwave repeaters Grant, Ida, Victor, Whiskey, Yankee, Blacktop – from CFS Alert to Eureka with a satellite link between Eureka and Ottawa.¹¹

Iqaluit, Nunavut

- JTFN detachment¹²
- Coast Guard MCTS Centre¹³ (Maritime Communication and Traffic Services)
 - A hub for the Coast Guard's Arctic operations while open from May December, monitoring Arctic vessel traffic.

Forward Nanisivik Naval Facility, Nunavut

- Naval berthing/docking and refuelling facility¹⁴
 - Location: Baffin Island, Nunavut
 - Facility approved by Nunavut Impact Review Board
 - Intended initially to be fully operational by 2015, with initial operating capacity in 2012, then delayed to 2016,¹⁵ and now anticipating being fully operational in 2018.¹⁶
 - The federal government awarded a \$55.8-million construction project to Almiq Contracting of Iqaluit in June 2014 and ground was broken in July of 2015.¹⁷

⁵ "Joint Task Force North," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 5 April 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

⁶ "1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group," Canadian Army, last modified 8 April 2016, http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca

⁷ "440 Transport Squadron," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 3 May 2016, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁸ "Detachments and Units" National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 6 January 2014, http://www.forces.gc.ca

⁹ "Canadian Forces Station Alert," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 January 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹⁰ Ruskin, Brett, "Canadian Forces to invest at least \$100M in green infrastructure," CBC News, 25 April 2016, <u>http://www.cbc.ca/</u>

¹¹ "Canadian Forces Station Alert," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 January 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹² "Detachments and Units" National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 6 January 2014, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹³ "Marine Communications and Traffic Services MCTS," Canadian Coast Guard, last modified 10 June 2016, <u>http://www.ccg-gcc.gc.ca</u>

¹⁴ "Nunavut regulator approves Arctic naval facility," CBC Online, 25 October 2013, <u>http://www.cbc.ca</u>

¹⁵ Col. (Retd) Sylvain Lescoutre, "Forward Operating Location Nanisivik: Halifax's Gateway to Canada's Arctic," Royal United Services Institute of Nova Scotia, 24 April 2012, http://www.rusi.ca

¹⁶ "Building the North: Project List, Canada's Economic Action Plan," Government of Canada, date not available, <u>http://actionplan.gc.ca/</u>

In March 2012 DefenceWatch reported a major scaling back of plans for the facility, which was confirmed in September 2014¹⁸, and again in 2016. SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper noted it would be downsized to a refuelling base and delayed by several years.¹⁹

Costs:

- In December 2013, a briefing note to Defence Minister Rob Nicholson approved a \$258 million plan to build the docking and refuelling station. The station was first estimated to cost \$100 million in 2007. In September 2014, the Defence Department scaled back the budget for the project due to the increasing costs. The budget for the base is now \$116 million.²⁰
- **Operational Specifications:**
 - Part-time, summer-only refuelling station for the Arctic Offshore Patrol Ships (and other govt ships)
 - Operational in summer and will be shut-down when not in use
 - No longer planning a jet-capable airstrip, instead a gravel runway at nearby Arctic Bay (built by Government of Nunavut)
 - No permanent housing will use Department of National Defence (DND) trailers

Resolute Bay, Nunavut

- Canadian Forces Arctic Training Centre (CAF ATC), which exists to allow the Canadian Army to "generate sufficient forces at an appropriate level of readiness for force employment to help meet the range of objectives and contingencies specified by the Government of Canada".²¹
- The CAF ATC includes:
 - Accommodations for up to 140 DND/CAF personnel
 - Dining and recreation building
 - 1100 square meters of warehouse space, including:
 - Facilities for mechanical work
 - Vehicle storage
 - Classroom
 - Briefing rooms
 - Operations centre
- Announced in February 2016 that the CAF wishes to expand its Arctic Training Centre at Resolute Bay. Expansion would allow the base to be operable year-round, improve conditions for troops, support increased training opportunities for Canadian Rangers and CAF personnel based in more southerly bases, and provide key support for Operation NANOOK.^{22 23}

Deep Sea Port, Iqaluit

A new Iqaluit deep sea port and small craft harbour is expected to be built by 2020. The project is expected to cost \$85-million. In addition to its use by oil and cargo tankers, the port will likely be used by northern Coast Guard and military vessels.²⁴

Forward Operating Locations (FOLs) for CF-18s

- Inuvik
- Yellowknife
- Igaluit
- Rankin Inlet

¹⁷ "Nanisivik, Nunavut, naval facility breaks ground," CBC News, 18 July 2016, <u>http://www.cbc.ca/</u>

²¹ "Backgrounder - Canadian Armed Forces Arctic Training Centre," Department of National Defence, last modified 15 August 2013, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u> ²² Pryce, Paul, "Resolute Bay: A chilly response in Ottawa," The Nato Association of Canada, 1 March 2016, http://natoassociation.ca

²³ "Battle for the Arctic: Canada Boosts Military Presence in the Far North," Sputnik News, 29 May 2016, http://sputniknews.com

²⁴ Van Dusen, John, "Iqaluit's deep sea port inches forward," CBC News, 28 September 2016, http://www.cbc.ca

¹⁸ Pugliese, David, "DND significantly cuts back on Harper's much-ballyhooed plan to build a naval facility at Nanisivik," Defence Watch, 22 March 2012, http://blogs.ottawacitizen.com/

¹⁹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

²⁰ "Plans for Arctic Naval Base scaled back after costs soared," The Prince George Citizen, 8 September 2014, http://www.princegeorgecitizen.com

Forward Transportation Hubs

Since 2011, there has been some public discussion regarding the development of forward operating bases:

Canadian Military Journal: "Defence must develop a greater capacity to operate in the Arctic for extended periods. This can be done by acquiring the necessary infrastructure in key locations that can be used as either a hub or as temporary forward operating bases. Such a capability would allow the CF to better deal with rapid response operations, including such matters as Search and Rescue. Moreover, it would allow the government to have better situational awareness, and to project key national elements anywhere within the Arctic region on very short notice."²⁵

The Toronto Star reports on a study commissioned by the Canadian Forces operational support command exploring the possibility of creating minimal transportation hubs with a landing strip and storage facilities at various locations in the Arctic – including Alert, Inuvik, Whitehorse, Rankin Inlet, Iqaluit, and Nanisivik (similar to plans for overseas hubs for prepositioning basic equipment and facilities).²⁶

1.2 Equipment

1.2.1 Air

CC-138 Twin Otters²⁷

- Location: Yellowknife, Northwest Territories
- 440 Squadron operates four Canadian-designed and -produced
- Approximately 55 aircrew and technicians, who are a mixture of Regular Force and Reserve Force members
- Maintains capability for "off-airport" operations on skis in the winter and on tundra tires in the summer
- The CC-138 Twin Otter Life Extension Project
 - Defence Acquisition Guide 2014: The CC-138 Twin Otter Life Extension Project will focus on making the aircrafts operational beyond 2018 by replacing the "Wing Boxes, install Cockpit Voice Recorders/Flight Data Recorders" and the aircrafts overall supportability. The project is estimated to cost between \$20 and \$49 million, with final delivery in 2020.²⁸
 - Defence Acquisition Guide 2015: Final delivery date adjusted to 2022.²⁹ The 2016 Defence Acquisition Guide confirmed this date.³⁰



Photo Credit: CC-138 Twin Otter side views, Stephen Priestley, http://www.casr.ca/101-af-cc138-twin-otter.htm

²⁵ Balasevicius, Tony, "Towards A Canadian Forces Arctic Operating Concept," Canadian Military Journal, 2011, <u>http://www.journal.forces.gc.ca</u>

²⁶ Woods, Allan, "Canada looking at building military bases in Arctic," The Star, 14 July 2011, http://www.thestar.com

[&]quot;...this new plan would see the force's hulking C-17 transport aircraft be loaded with personnel, supplies and a disassembled military helicopter — likely at CFB Trenton in Ontario — and dispatched to the northern hub. There, the helicopter would be reassembled and the Arctic hub would be used as a base for the mission.

[&]quot;Based on calculations that factor in the time it would take to travel to the Arctic from Trenton and the costs involved (which was then cross-referenced with ship and airline traffic, as well as the probability of space junk hurtling toward Earth), the study found Nunavut's Rankin Inlet — on the western shore of Hudson's Bay — would be the most cost-effective spot for a single hub, reducing transportation costs by 28 per cent.

[&]quot;The average response time to get anywhere in the Arctic from the Rankin Inlet staging base was still 48 hours, underlining the vast territory to be covered. Resolute, located on Cornwallis Island in Nunavut, offers the quickest average response time at 35 hours, but the runway there would require further development to accommodate a C-17 aircraft, the study said.

[&]quot;From a cost-avoidance perspective, the optimal number of hubs would be three, corresponding to Iqaluit, Yellowknife and Rankin Inlet," said the report, noting that an average of 49 per cent of transportation costs could be saved.

[&]quot;Using a three-hub solution, the maximum response time would be 46 hours instead of 64 hours for a single hub. The minimum response time would be 16 to 18 hours for locations around the hubs," said the study.

²⁷ "CC-128 Twin Otters," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 17 April 2015, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

²⁸ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2014," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, June 2014, http://www.forces.gc.ca

²⁹ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

³⁰ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2016," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

Surveillance Drones

• Transport Canada is considering using an unmanned aerial system to monitor Arctic waters, scanning for environmental problems and shifting sea ice, as well as serving as an increased display of Canadian sovereignty over Arctic waters. The department's request notes that, "There is an increased presence of domestic marine activity and foreign vessels in the Arctic, thereby increasing the need for surveillance."³¹

1.2.2 Land

Canadian Forces Station Alert³² (See 'Alert' under 'Bases' for more information)

- Collects signal intelligence
- High Frequency and Direction Finding (HFDF) facilities to support search and rescue

North Warning System³³ (NWS)

- A joint United States and Canadian radar system, including 11 long-range and 36 short-range radars along Arctic coast of Canada
- These are elements of a "radar buffer zone" 4,800 km long and 320 km wide (from the Alaska border to across Baffin Island to Greenland and down the Labrador Coast)³⁴
 - The bulk of the NWS radars are not at the frontier, but are well within Canadian territory, and thus cannot monitor the air approaches to Canadian territory and air space in the high Arctic
- The Canadian Senate heard testimony from an Inuk Corporate Executive, Charlie Lyall, endorsing the Canadian military presence: "For Inuit, an active military presence in the Arctic is vital and provides strong partnerships for its major projects." He told the Senate Committee that Inuit participation in clean-up of old Distant Early Warning (DEW) sites had expanded their capacity for Northern contract work, as well as for undertaking contract negotiations. He also spoke about the Inuit role in North Warning System operation and maintenance. "DND can continue to play a vital role in the fiscal and corporate development process for Inuit."
- The Canadian part of the North Warning System was operated and maintained by Pan Arctic Inuit Logistics (PAIL) and and ATCO Structure and Logistics from 2001 2014. ³⁶ As of April 2014, Raytheon Canada, an Ottawa-based company, was awarded a 5-year contract to carry out the job.³⁷
 - According to CBC News, "at least a fifth of the salaries paid through the [Raytheon] contract must be for Inuit beneficiaries, and at least three beneficiaries must be full-time supervisors, managers or manager trainees."
- Defence Acquisition Guide 2016 lists a preliminary estimate of \$1.5 billion in replacements for the NWS, with a contract being awarded in 2024 and final delivery of the replacements planned for 2026 2036.³⁸
- The most recent Canadian Defence Policy, *Strong, Secure, Engaged,* made clear that updates will be made but no clarity is given in this report on how. According to the report, "Canada and the United States have already launched bilateral collaboration to seek an innovative technological solution to continental defence challenges including early warning. Studies are ongoing to determine how best to replace this important capability as part of the overall NORAD modernization."³⁹

³¹Bob Weber, "Transport Canada wants drones to watch Arctic waters," The Canadian Press, 9 March 2016, http://www.metronews.ca

³² "Canadian Forces Station Alert," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 January 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

³³ "North Warning System," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 17 December 2012, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

³⁴ "The Canada-U.S. Defence Relationship," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 10 February 2015, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>
³⁵ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

³⁶ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

³⁷ "Raytheon wins 5-year North Warning System contract," CBC News, 1 April 2014, <u>www.cbc.ca</u>

³⁸ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2016," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

³⁹ "Strong, Secure, Engaged: Canada's Defence Policy," Ministry of National Defence, 2017, <u>http://dgpaapp.forces.gc.ca/en/canada-defence-policy/docs/canada-defence-policy-report.pdf</u>

All-Terrain Vehicles

David Pugliese:

- "The Army has an Arctic capability project underway called the medium all-terrain vehicle. Canada already operates the Hägglunds Bv206, a tracked armoured vehicle built by a Swedish subsidiary of Britain's BAE Systems.
- "We have a re-life package for that or separately we have the BvS10," said Jim Reid, BAE's business development director for Canada.
- Reid said such vehicles could play more than just a role in the Arctic.
- "It's not just about the snow. It actually gives you a capability to do other things," he said, noting that the BvS10 has been used in Afghanistan and Sierra Leone.
- General Dynamics Land Systems-Canada and ST Kinetics, a Singapore firm, also have their eye on the Army project. They've joined forces to promote the Bronco New-Generation Marginal Terrain Vehicle.
- No cost details or timelines have been released on the Army project."⁴⁰

In April 2014 the Government announced that it would acquire 17 "marginal terrain" vehicles for the Canadian Special Operations Forces, for operating in Arctic and desert conditions, but that the Canadian Army proposal to acquire 100 such vehicles for use in the Arctic and elsewhere to replace the Bv206 would be delayed until after 2023.⁴¹

Update March 2016: The Canadian Army plans to replace the Bv206 to either Argo XT tracked small unit support vehicles or D900 diesel-powered snowmobiles. Trials are currently in progress to decide which the army will use.⁴²

Stealth Snowmobiles

- "In August 2011, the Department of National Defence informed industry it was interested in the development of a prototype snowmobile for covert military operations in Canada's Arctic. The department's science branch, Defence Research and Development Canada, has reserved 500,000 Canadian dollars to develop a prototype gas-electric hybrid vehicle. The government has told industry that existing gas-powered engines are too noisy for covert operations, and it wants a snowmobile with a silent mode that could be activated when necessary.
- The special operations forces are interested in acquiring such a vehicle, military sources said. It is expected that a prototype can be developed by next March."⁴³
 - In 2013 the military was testing a new hybrid-electric snowmobile, to test speed, noise levels, endurance, and acceleration. The Globe and Mail reports the snowmobile, nicknamed Loki, has a \$620,000 price tag, the value of the development contract with CrossChasm Technologies of Waterloo, Ontario. The report says "National Defence has made it clear it does not intend to spend any more money on Arctic mobility for eight years, but its research branch says the evaluation of the silent snowmobile, though still in its early states, will continue."⁴⁴
 - Meanwhile, the Canadian Press reported in 2013 on the slow pace of replacing the current inventory of snowmobiles and all-terrain vehicles in the north. While 1980s era vehicles were slated for replacement, Arctic military units have been informed they will have to stay in service much longer. Leading up to 2013, 310 snowmobiles had been replaced, out of a fleet of 963, and another 310 all-terrain vehicles were required. However, an Army spokesperson confirmed that "there are no plans at this time to purchase (additional) Arctic vehicles." New acquisitions are not scheduled until 2021/22 when the "Domestic and Arctic Mobility Enhancement" project is slated to kick in.⁴⁵

⁴⁴ Blatchford, Andy, "Canadian Forces test 'Loki,' a stealth snowmobile for covert Arctic ops," Globe and Mail, 18 August 2014, http://www.theglobeandmail.com

⁴⁰ Referred to by David Pugliese, "Canada Ramps Up Arctic Arsenal," Defense News, 25 January 2012, <u>http://www.defensenews.com</u>
⁴¹ Pugliese, David, "Canada's Special Forces to get new vehicles for the Arctic but Army left out in the cold," Ottawa Citizen, 18 April 2014, <u>www.ottawacitizen.com</u>

 ⁴²Richard Tomkins, "Cold war prep: Canadian tests Army vehicles in the Arctic," United Press International, 4 March 2016, <u>http://www.upi.com</u>
 ⁴³ Referred to by David Pugliese, "Canada Ramps Up Arctic Arsenal," Defense News, 25 January 2012, <u>http://www.defensenews.com</u>

⁴⁵ Brewster, Murray, "Army scrambles to buy snowmobiles for Arctic units amid spending deep freeze," Globe and Mail, 18 August 2013, http://www.theglobeandmail.com

1.2.3 Sea

Not available

1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)

Command Centres: JTFN (including locations of headquarters and detachments)⁴⁶

- Joint Taskforce North (JTFN)
- Headquartered in Yellowknife
- One of six regional joint task forces under the Canadian Joint Operations Command, the six are: JTF North (headquartered in Yellowknife, Pacific (Victoria), West (Edmonton), Central (Toronto), East (Montreal), Atlantic (Halifax)
- JTFN describes its area of responsibility as covering about four million square kilometres, 40 percent of Canada's land mass, and 75 percent of its coastline which includes 94 major islands and 36,469 minor islands of the Arctic Archipelago
- There has been a permanent military command in Yellowknife since 1970

440 Transport Squadron⁴⁷ (under JTFN)

- Location: Yellowknife, Northwest Territories
- The only RCAF unit permanently stationed in the Canadian north
- 440 Squadron's tasks include airlift, utility and liaison flights in support of Canadian Forces Nortwhern Area, the Canadian Rangers, other Canadian Forces activities and the Cadets in the North; can assist in search and rescue missions, but it is not a dedicated search and rescue unit

Reserve Units

• JTFN also hosts a small army reserve unit (well short of 100) based in Yellowknife

Training Facilities

- Canadian Forces Arctic Training Centre⁴⁸
- Location: Resolute Bay, Nunavut
- Opened Aug 16, 2013
- Used for training and operations, including annual Exercise Arctic Ram
 - Pre-position equipment and vehicles
 - Also serves as "a command post for emergency operations and disaster response in support of civilian authorities."
 - The Arctic Training Centre facilities include:
 - Accommodations for up to 140 DND/CAF personnel
 - Dining and recreation building
 - 1100 square meters of warehouse space, including:
 - Facilities for mechanical work
 - Vehicle storage
 - Classroom
 - Briefing rooms
 - Operations centre

Press reports have noted the increased focus on emergency response capacity and disaster assistance to civilian authorities. In 2013, then Defence Minister Rob Nicholson put it this way:

"The Canadian Armed Forces Arctic Training Centre will reinforce the Canadian Armed Forces' presence in this important region of Canada while providing support to civilian authorities."⁴⁹

⁴⁶ JTFN is one of six regional joint task forces under the Canadian Joint Operations Command, the six are:

JTF North (headquartered in Yellowknife, Pacific (Victoria), West (Edmonton), Central (Toronto), East (Montreal), Atlantic (Halifax). Details of JTFN are at the Department of National Defence Website: http://www.cjoc.forces.gc.ca

⁴⁷ "440 Transport Squadron," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 3 May 2016, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

 ⁴⁸ "Backgrounder - Canadian Armed Forces Arctic Training Centre," Department of National Defence, 15 August 2013, http://www.forces.gc.ca
 ⁴⁹ "Ottawa opens scaled-back Arctic training facility in Nunavut's Resolute Bay," Nunatsiaq Online, 15 August 2013, http://www.forces.gc.ca

• Announced in February 2016 that the CAF wishes to expand its Arctic Training Centre at Resolute Bay, and possibly allow for operations year round.

"We need to build (on) what we've got right now in terms of capacity," said Canadian Army Lt.-Col. Luc St-Denis, who co-ordinates training at the center and who oversaw its initial development. "January to April is a small season. There is potential for more than that, especially in the springtime and summertime."⁵⁰

CC-138 Twin Otters Aircrew⁵¹

- Location: Yellowknife, Northwest Territories
- Approximately 55 aircrew and technicians, who are a mixture of Regular Force and Reserve Force members

Canadian Forces Station Alert Personnel⁵² (since the late 1950s)

- Location: Qikiqtaaluk Region, Nunavut
- Usually about 25 Canadian Forces personnel stationed there, plus 30 civilian support personnel and up to four Environment Canada staff

Rangers

1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group (under JTFN)⁵³

- Headquartered in Yellowknife⁵⁴
- Encompasses Nunavut, Yukon, Northwest Territories, and Northern British Colombia⁵⁵
- The 1CRPG is part of a national ranger force of about 4,000, operating in more than 200 communities, with language capabilities in 26 languages, many of which are Indigenous.⁵⁶
 - "The 1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group (1 CRPG) encompasses Nunavut, Yukon, Northwest Territories, and Atlin, B.C. which account for about 40 percent of Canada's land mass. 1 CRPG has over 1750 Rangers in 60 patrols and more than 1600 Junior Canadian Rangers (JCR) in 41 communities across the north."⁵⁷
 - an earlier (Feb 2012) report indicated that the 58 hamlets then served by 1CRPG were distributed in the north with 25 patrols in Nunavut, 22 in Northwest Territory, 11 in Yukon Territory and 1 in Atlin, BC.⁵⁸ The website of the Canadian Army includes an interactive map showing all locations along with brief descriptions of each unit's activities.⁵⁹
 - DND offers this comment on the demographics and conditions of the areas under Ranger patrols: "With only three medium-sized cities to speak of, it oversees many small communities, some of which are only accessible by air or by ice in the winter. Many of the residents in 1 CRPG speak another language other than French or English as their primary language. And the land covered by CFNA is buried by snow and ice, and covered in darkness for many months each year."⁶⁰
- Ranger tasks include:
 - providing local expertise to army
 - serving as guides and advisors in operations and exercises
 - conducting North Warning System (NWS) patrols
 - assisting in search and rescue
 - "...their presence and vigilance help assert Canadian sovereignty and provide Canada Command with 'eyes and ears' in the country's most remote areas."⁶¹

⁵⁰ Pugliese, David, "Canadian military looks to expand Arctic footprint," 23 May 2016, Defence News, http://www.defensenews.com

⁵¹ "CC-128 Twin Otters," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 17 April 2015, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁵² "Canadian Forces Station Alert," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 January 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁵³ "1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group," Canadian Army, last modified 8 April 2016, <u>http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁵⁵ "1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group," Canadian Army, last modified 8 April 2016, <u>http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca</u>
⁵⁶ "About the Canadian Rangers," Canadian Army last modified 6 June 2014, <u>http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁵⁷ "1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group," Canadian Army, last modified 12 July 2013, <u>http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca/en/1-crpg/index.page</u>

⁵⁸ "1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group," Canadian Army, last modified 8 April 2016, http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca

⁵⁹ "Patrols," Canadian Army, last modified 4 January 2016, <u>http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁶⁰ "Patrols," Canadian Army, last modified 4 January 2016, <u>http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁶¹ DND - BG #09.002a - 17 April 2009. The Canadian Forces in the North. <u>http://www.cfna.dnd.ca/nr-sp/09-002a-eng.asp</u>

- "The Government, as Prime Minister Harper announced in 2007, is enlarging the Canadian Rangers. JTFN will add 300 Rangers, bringing the total up to 1,900 in the North, with numbers nationwide to rise from about 4,000 up to 5,000."⁶²
 - 2013, 4,990 Rangers are serving in 178 patrols
 - 2015, the replacement of Lee-Enfield rifles is to begin with new rifles phased in over three years to 2018.⁶³
- According to SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper, Trudeau's Liberal government is planning to further increase the size of the Rangers, with a "special small battalion-sized (500 troops) regular army unit for Arctic operations" included in that plan.⁶⁴
 - Canada's Defence Policy Report in 2017 notes plans to, "enhance and expand the training and effectiveness of the Canadian Rangers to improve their functional capabilities within the Canadian Armed Forces".⁶⁵
 - See Operation NUNALIVUT (annual exercise involving the Rangers)



Photo Credit: Ranger, Canadian Army: http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca/en/canadian-rangers/index.page

P. Whitney Lackenbauer on Rangers:

"The danger, of course, is to manage expectations so that policy-makers do not try to make the Rangers into something they are not. They are Reservists, but they cannot be expected to possess the same capabilities as southern-based units. Making them more military will neither improve Canada's security nor our sovereignty. ... The Rangers are not broken, and I see danger in trying to fix them."⁶⁶

Re 2015 replacement of Lee-Enfield rifles

• The Canadian Army has "acknowledged to the [Ottawa] Citizen that it was having trouble coming up with enough money to buy new rifles to replace the 60-year-old guns used in the Arctic by the Canadian Rangers. The project was supposed to deliver the rifles last year at a cost of \$10 million but the army acknowledges the purchase won't happen until 2017-2021."⁶⁷

Canadian Coast Guard Auxiliary

 Creation of a Coast Guard Auxiliary in the Arctic is promised as part of Canada's new \$1.5 billion oceans protections plan, unveiled in November 2016 by three federal government departments. The Auxiliary would contribute to "improvements in safety, especially in increased protection from oil spills and other marine emergencies".⁶⁸

⁶² Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, p. 7, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

⁶³ "Building the North: Project List, Canada's Economic Action Plan," Government of Canada, date not available, <u>http://actionplan.gc.ca/</u>

⁶⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶⁵ "Strong, Secure, Engaged: Canada's Defence Policy," Ministry of National Defence, 2017, <u>http://dgpaapp.forces.gc.ca/en/canada-defence-policy/docs/cana</u>

⁶⁶ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, p. 9, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

 ⁶⁷ "Canada's Special Forces to get new vehicles for the Arctic but Army left out in the cold," Ottawa Citizen, 18 April 2014, <u>www.ottawacitizen.com</u>
 ⁶⁸ "Arctic will share in Canada's new \$1.5 billion oceans protection plan," Nunatsiaq News, 8 November 2016, <u>http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca</u>

⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻⁻

1.4 Policy Units and Regulators

Northern Canada Vessel Traffic Services (NORDREG)

Vessels over 300 tons (or over 500 tons combined of a vessel towing or pushing another vessel) and/or carrying dangerous materials sailing in northern waters are required to submit a sailing plan, provide position updates, report any deviation from the sailing plan, and send in a final report.⁶⁹ The compulsory reporting reinforces Canada's sovereignty claims but, on the other hand, draws attention to the lack of enforcement capacity.⁷⁰ The 2011 Senate Committee Report describes NORDREG in this way:

"Canada also maintains situational awareness through law and regulation in the North, particularly through NORDREG—the Northern Canada Vessel Traffic Services Zone. In the summer of 2010, NORDREG was extended from 100 nautical miles to 200 nautical miles offshore.

"Whereas NORDREG compliance was originally voluntary, as of summer 2010 it became mandatory. All vessels of 300 gross tonnes or more, or 500 gross tonnes combined weight if involved in a towing or pushing operation, and any vessel or combination of vessels carrying pollutants or dangerous goods, must submit reports before entering, while in, and upon leaving the NORDREG Zone.

"The Canadian Coast Guard must verify that the vessels are suitably constructed to withstand ice conditions, monitor their location at all times, and provide support services including updated ice condition information. [One witness] recommended that all vessels, not just those over 300 gross tonnes, be subject to NORDREG."⁷¹

The Maritime Communications and Traffic Services Centre in Iqaluit receive reports from ships during the period of approximately May 15 to December 31 for:

- Arctic waters from the Canada/Greenland border to longitude 141º W, and north to the geographic North Pole;
- Waters of the Mackenzie River watershed;
- Waters of Hudson Bay, Hudson Strait, Foxe Basin, Ungava Bay, and James Bay.⁷²

The Arctic Security Working Group⁷³

The 2011 Senate Committee Report: "The Arctic Security Working Group is made up of representatives from the Canadian Forces, Canadian Coast Guard, other federal government departments and agencies, the territorial governments, aboriginal peoples organizations and other Northern stakeholders.

"It meets twice a year and has dealt with issues such as the possibility of terrorist attack on natural gas facilities, contraband moving through the mail and the increased risk of an air disaster due to increased air traffic. Col (Ret'd) Leblanc said the ASWG was created to improve "practically non-existent communications" between departments, and to improve security. He recommended to the Committee that the ASWG be maintained."⁷⁴ The group meets "to enhance the interaction and working relationships of the ASWG membership. It provides a venue for discussing matters that address security and safety issues in the Arctic in a team environment. 'The Team North approach to addressing the security concerns of the Arctic is imperative because no single department, federal or territorial, works independently in the north; collectively, success will be achieved and the Government of Canada's mandate will be fulfilled,' said Brigadier-General Chris Whitecross, the Commander of Joint Task Force North (JTFN). ...The Team North approach is essential for ensuring the safety and security of Canadians now, and into the future."⁷⁵

⁶⁹ "Vessel Traffic Reporting Arctic Canada Traffic Zone (NORDREG)," Canadian Coast Guard, last modified 24 June 2016, http://www.ccg-cc.gc.ca

⁷⁰ Exner-Pirot, Heather, "What's In a Name? NORDREG Becomes Mandatory," Eye on the Arctic, 12 July 2010, <u>http://eyeonthearctic.rcinet.ca</u>
⁷¹ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, p. 15, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

⁷² Peter Varga, "Iqaluit Coast Guard office maintains pan-Arctic vigil," Nunatsiaq Online, 26 July 2013, <u>http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca</u>

⁷³ "Marine Communications and Traffic Services MCTS," Canadian Coast Guard, last modified 10 June 2016, <u>http://www.ccg-gcc.gc.ca</u>

⁷⁴ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, http://www.parl.gc.ca

⁷⁵ ASWG Staff, "16th Meeting of the Arctic Security Working Group," 16 May 2007, Security Innovator, http://securityinnovator.com

Pan Arctic Inuit Logistics (PAIL)⁷⁶

- PAIL⁷⁷ is wholly owned by the Inuit through organizations linked to the four territories delineated by land claims agreements: Inuvialuit (within the NWT), Nunavut, Nunavik (Northern Quebec), and Nunatsiavut (Northern Labrador).
- PAIL formed in order to attain the contract to operate and manage the North Warning System (NWS). The NWS work is done through a joint venture between PAIL and ATCO Structure and Logistics, ⁷⁸ a manufacturer of modular buildings, remote workforce accommodations, emergency response services, etc.
- The Canadian Senate heard testimony from an Inuk Corporate Executive, Charlie Lyall, endorsing the Canadian military presence: "For Inuit, an active military presence in the Arctic is vital and provides strong partnerships for its major projects." He told the Senate Committee that Inuit participation in clean-up of old Distant Early Warning (DEW) sites had expanded their capacity for Northern contract work, as well as for undertaking contract negotiations. He also spoke about the Inuit role in North Warning System operation and maintenance. "DND can continue to play a vital role in the fiscal and corporate development process for Inuit."⁷⁹

2. Security Assets based in the South for Operations in the North

2.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc)

Not available

2.2 Equipment

2.2.1 Air

Aircraft⁸⁰

In response to Canada's updated defence policy report in June 2017, CBC reported that, "Ottawa has unveiled a plan to boost military spending by more than \$30-billion over the next decade – much of it to pay for the ballooning cost of new warships and fighter jets..."⁸¹ Canada's Defence Policy Report also notes the plan to "align the Canadian Air Defence Identification Zone (CADIZ) with our sovereign airspace".⁸² However, no information on how this will be made feasible is disclosed.

CP-140 (P-3C) Aurora



Photo Credit: CP-140 Aurora, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- 18 in operation
- Capable of 17 hour flights and a range of almost 10,000 km (patrols average 10 hours and 5,000 km) without refuelling, and are primarily used for northern maritime surveillance and patrol.

⁷⁷ Pan Arctic Inuit - <u>http://www.pail.ca</u>

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁷⁶ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

⁷⁸ ATCO Structure and Logistics - <u>http://www.atcosl.com/en-ca/</u>

⁷⁹ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

⁸⁰ "Aircraft," Royal Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 19 August 2015, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

^{81 81} LeBlanc, Daniel, Chase, Stephen, "Ottawa lays out \$62-billion in new military spending over 20 years," The Globe and Mail, 7 June 2017, www.theglobeandmail.com

⁸² "Strong, Secure, Engaged: Canada's Defence Policy," Ministry of National Defence, 2017, <u>http://dgpaapp.forces.gc.ca/en/canada-defence-policy/docs/canada-defence-policy-report.pdf</u>

- Monitor for illegal fishing, immigration, drug trafficking, pollution violations, SAR, and deliver survival material in Arctic Survival Kits Air Droppable, or SKADs (all of these roles are essentially aid to the civil authority)
- Canada is in the process of updating and extending the life of 14 of these 18 CP-140 Auroras, with the intention to operate only 10 at once in a rotation of 14 in order to achieve a life expectancy to 2030.⁸³
 - Initially, the 18 CP-140 patrol aircraft was planned to be replaced by 10-12 new aircraft from 2020.⁸⁴ "In February 2014 the Canadian Government announced it would not replace the CP-140 but would instead extend the life of the aircraft to 2030 and refit the aircraft in a \$2.13 billion life-extension project. These enhancements and modifications will begin in 2014 and be completed by 2021 through the Aurora Incremental Modernization Project (AIMP), the Aurora Structural Life Extension Project (ASLEP) and the Aurora Extension Proposal (AEP)."⁸⁵
 - AIMP and ASLEP are currently in implementation phase, with close out occurring in 2020 and 2019 respectively.⁸⁶

CF-18 Fighter Aircraft



Photo Credit: CF-188 Hornet, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- Based in Cold Lake, Alberta and Bagotville, Quebec
- Controlled out of Canadian Air Defence Sector (CADS) in North Bay
- In September 2010 two CF-18s flew over Alert, assisted by a CC-150T Polaris air-to-air refuelling tanker
- Modernization completed in 2010 extends the operational life to at least 2020⁸⁷
- 77 operational (59 CF-18AM or F/A-18A, and 18 CF-18BM or F/A 18B) regularly deployed to the Arctic region⁸⁸
- April 2016: Canadian government is currently carrying out upgrades to push the lifespan of the aircrafts to 2025.⁸⁹
 About 1/3 of the fleet has undergone structural upgrades and electronic upgrades are also planned.⁹⁰
- October 2016: Harper government had plans to replace all F/A-18s with 65 F-35s but, according to SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper, the Trudeau government has announced that they will replace F/A 18s with a cheaper alternative, possibly F/A 18Cs.⁹¹
- February 2017 project updates: The Canadian government is buying 18 Boeing Super Hornets as "interim" fighter jets to ease pressure on the aging fleet of CF-18s until a permanent replacement can be bought.⁹²
 - Aiming for deal to be official by end of 2017⁹³
- June 2017 update: Within the government's "Strong, Secure, Engaged" plan to increase military spending by over \$30 billion over the next 10 years, the government committed to increasing spending on fighter planes. CBC reported that, "the long-term replacement fleet for Canada's aging CF-18 warplanes will consist of 88 aircraft at a cost of up to \$19-billion."⁹⁴

⁸⁸ "The Military Balance 2012," IISS, 7 March 2012, p. 52., <u>https://www.iiss.org</u>

⁹³ Berthiaume, Lee, "Liberals take next step toward buying Super Hornets, hope for deal by year's end," The Canadian Press, 14 March 2017, http://www.news1130.com

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

 ⁸³ Pugliese, David, "Canada needs to boost Aurora fleet now, start purchase of new surveillance aircraft," Ottawa Citizen, 5 May 2017, <u>http://ottawacitizen.com</u>
 ⁸⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, March 2012.

⁸⁵ "Expanding the CP-140 Modernized Aurora Fleet", Royal Canadian Airforce, last modified 20 March 2014, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/

 ⁸⁶ "CP-140 Aurora fleet modernization and life extension," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 10 January 2017, http://www.forces.gc.ca
 ⁸⁷ "The Military Balance 2012," IISS, 7 March 2012, p. 52., <u>https://www.iiss.org</u>

⁸⁹ Pugliese, David, "Time running out to upgrade Canada's aging CF-18 jets," Ottawa Citizen, 14 April 2016, <u>http://news.nationalpost.com</u>

⁹⁰ Berthlaume, Lee, "Canada doesn't have enough fighter jets, Liberals say, despite plans to upgrade CF-18 fighter fleet," Ottawa Citizen, 16 June 2016, http://news.nationalpost.com

⁹¹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A new Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016, p. 4.
⁹² Pugliese, David, "Liberal MPs sideline Conservative motion to study purchase of 18 Super Hornets," Defense Watch, 10 February 2017, http://ottawacitizen.com/news/national/defence-watch/liberal-mps-sideline-conservative-motion-to-study-purchase-of-18-super-hornets

^{94 94} LeBlanc, Daniel, Chase, Stephen, "Ottawa lays out \$62-billion in new military spending over 20 years," The Globe and Mail, 7 June 2017, www.theglobeandmail.com

Supply and Search and Rescue Aircraft (in addition to the 4 CC-138 Twin Otters based in North)

CC-177 Globemaster III⁹⁵



Photo Credit: C-17 Globemaster III, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- Made its first landing in Resolute Bay in July 2010 (has also landed and taken off in winter conditions)
- Used for first time in Operation Boxtop in August 2010, landing in Alert (first landing there in May 2010)⁹⁶

CC-115 Buffalo



Photo Credit: CC-115 Buffalo, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- "All six Canadian Forces CC-115s are employed by 442 Transport and Rescue Squadron out of Comox, British Columbia. The squadron is responsible for an SAR zone stretching from the BC–Washington border to the Arctic, and from the Rocky Mountains to 1200 km out over the Pacific Ocean. With a maximum load of 2727 kg—or 41 fully equipped soldiers—the Buffalo has an operational range of 2240 km."⁹⁷
- As of December 2016, the Airbus C-295 was announced as Canada's next fixed-wing search-and-rescue plane to replace the nearly 50 year-old CC-115 Buffalo aircraft.⁹⁸

Airbus C-295



Photo Credit: C-295 Airbus, Airbus, http://www.cbc.ca/news/politics/fixed-wing-search-planes-

- In early December 2016, a number of officials from the Trudeau government announced the selection of the Airbus C-295 as Canada's next fixed-wing search-and-rescue plane to replace the nearly 50 year-old CC-115 Buffalo aircraft.⁹⁹
- A two-step procurement process will cost \$4.7 billion over the next two decades.
 - The first phase at a cost of \$2.4 billion involves the purchase of 16 C-295W aircraft modified for search-and-rescue missions as well as "a training simulator, to be located in Comox, B.C., and 11 years of in-service support and maintenance".¹⁰⁰

⁹⁵ "CC-177 Globemaster III," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 April 2014, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

⁹⁶ "CC-115 Buffalo," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 1 August 2013, HYPERLINK "http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft-current/cc-115.page" http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

⁹⁷ "CC-115 Buffalo," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 1 August 2013, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

 ⁹⁸ Brewster, Murray, "Airbus chosen to build Canada's new search planes, ending 12-year procurement odyssey," 7 December 2016, CBC News, www.cbc.ca
 ⁹⁹ Brewster, Murray, "Airbus chosen to build Canada's new search planes, ending 12-year procurement odyssey," 7 December 2016, CBC News, www.cbc.ca
 ¹⁰⁰ Brewster, Murray, "Airbus chosen to build Canada's new search planes, ending 12-year procurement odyssey," 7 December 2016, CBC News, www.cbc.ca

CC-130 Hercules



Photo Credit: CC-130 Hercules, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- Workhorse of airlifts to north
- "The first CC-130E Hercules entered service in Canada in 1960, and the current CC-130H Hercules was purchased in 1996.

"The CC-130 Hercules is a four-engine fixed-wing turboprop aircraft that can carry up to 78 combat troops. It is used for a wide range of missions, including troop transport, tactical airlift (both palletized and vehicular cargo), search and rescue (SAR), air-to-air refuelling (AAR), and aircrew training. It can carry more than 17, 000 kilograms (about 38, 000 pounds) of fuel for tactical AAR."¹⁰¹

• The last CC-130E Hercules took final flight on April 6 2016.¹⁰²

CC-130J Hercules



Photo Credit: CC-130J Hercules, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- Made first landing in Alert in Sept 2010¹⁰³
- "September 2011 marked the first time that the annual resupply mission to Canadian Forces Station Alert in the Arctic (Operation Boxtop) was carried out using solely the CC-130J"¹⁰⁴
- "The CC-130J Hercules is a four-engine, fixed-wing turboprop aircraft that can carry up to 92 combat troops or 128 non-combat passengers. It is used for a wide range of missions, including troop transport, tactical airlift (both palletized and vehicular cargo) and aircrew training. While on the outside the CC-130J looks almost identical to the older Hercules, internally the J-model Hercules is essentially a completely new aircraft."¹⁰⁵
- Defence Acquisition Guide 2014: Upgrades to the CC-130J "will ensure compatibility with the future European and North American airspace requirement". Project estimated to cost between \$100 million and \$249 million and to be delivered between 2021 and 2025.¹⁰⁶
 - February 2016: "Cascade Aerospace Inc., announces the completion of the first Block 7.0 upgrade installation on a C-130J Super Hercules operated by the Royal Canadian Air Force (RCAF). This is the first C-130J Block 7.0 upgrade to be completed outside of an Original Equipment Manufacturer (OEM) or Government facility. All 17 CC-130Js in the RCAF's fleet will receive the Block 7.0 upgrade with Cascade Aerospace managing the installation process."¹⁰⁷
- Defence Acquisition Guide 2015: Final delivery estimated for 2025.¹⁰⁸

¹⁰⁸ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, March 2015, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁰¹ CC-130 Hercules - <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft-current/cc-130.page</u>, last modified 16 August 2013

¹⁰² Pugliese, David, "Last RCAF C-130E Hercules flies into history," Ottawa Citizen, 6 April 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

¹⁰³ "CC-130J Hercules (Cargo Aircraft)," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 April 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹⁰⁴ "Canada welcomes final CC-130J Hercules," CC-130J.ca, 8 June 2012, http://cc-130j.ca

¹⁰⁵ "CC-130J Hercules (Cargo Aircraft)," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 23 April 2014, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

¹⁰⁶ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2014," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, June 2014, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁰⁷ IMP Group International Inc., "Cascade Aerospace begins Block 7.0 Upgrade on Canada's CC-130J Hercules," 9 February 2016, http://www.impgroup.com



Photo Credit: CC-150 Polaris, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- "The CC-150 Polaris [Airbus a-310] is a multi-purpose, twin-engine, long-range jet aircraft that can be converted for passenger, freight or medical transport, or any combination of these configurations. The Polaris can reach a speed of up to Mach 0.84 (1029 km/h) carrying a load of up to 32,000 kilograms (70,560 pounds). Passenger loads range from 28 to 194 people, depending on the particular aircraft tail number and configuration."¹⁰⁹
 - Canada operates 3 CC-150 (2 are in tanker role)
- Defence Acquisition Guide 2015: Prolong the life expectancy of the CC-150 Polaris beyond 2026. Five CC-150 aircrafts will be upgraded, with the final delivery between 2026 and 2035. The project is estimated to cost \$100 million to \$249 million.¹¹⁰
- *Defence Acquisition Guide 2016:* With final delivery expected by 2025, DND plans to install a missile approach warning and infrared countermeasures system in the CC-150 fleets.¹¹¹

CC-150T (refuelling tanker)

- "As part of the Air Force Multi-Role Tanker Transport (MRTT) program, two CC-150 Polaris aircraft have been converted to strategic air-to-air refuellers for Canada's fleet of CF-18 Hornet fighter aircraft. The Polaris MRTT is capable of transferring 36,000 kilograms (79,380 pounds) of fuel to receiving aircraft over a journey of 4,630 kilometres (2,875 statute miles). Consequently, one Polaris tanker can ferry a flight of four CF 18 Hornets non-stop across the Atlantic Ocean."¹¹²
- "The RCAF has plans to replace its CC-150 Polaris refuelling tankers but is holding off until the Liberal government makes its decision on what type of aircraft will be selected to replace the CF-18s."¹¹³

Fixed-Wing Search and Rescue Aircraft Replacement Project¹¹⁴

- The Government of Canada is buying 16 C295W aircraft equipped with advanced technology systems to support Canada's search and rescue operations."¹¹⁵
- These aircraft are replacing the ageing fleet of six CC-115 Buffalo aircraft and 13 CC-130 Hercules aircraft that have been used for SAR duties over the past 20 to 40 years.¹¹⁶
- The contract was awarded to Airbus Defence and Space on December 1, 2016. ¹¹⁷
- The first aircraft are expected to be delivered by 2019 with the last delivered in 2022 and "the contract for the initial period of 11 years is valued at \$2.4 billion". ¹¹⁸ This is ahead of the estimated schedule made by the government during the project definition process. ¹¹⁹

¹¹⁰ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁰⁹ "CC-150 Polaris," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 22 May 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹¹¹ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2016," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹¹² "CC-150 Polaris," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 22 May 2014, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹¹³ Pugliese, David, "Polaris replacement will have to wait until decision on new fighter jet, says RCAF commander," Ottawa Citizen, 2 May 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

¹¹⁴ The Senate Committee's 2011 Report said this of the SAR replacement:

[&]quot;The aging CC-115 Buffalo and CC-130 Hercules fixed wing aircraft need to be replaced. They have been the backbone of Canada's SAR fleet since the 1960s. In 2004, a Statement of Operational Requirements (SOR) was drafted for replacement fixed wing SAR airplanes—but in the fall of 2010, after program delays due to higher priority procurements, comments on the SOR by industry and an SOR review by the National Research Council, the Department of National Defence has gone back almost to square one and is drafting a new SOR. In the meantime, Canada's shrinking fleet of elderly Buffaloes and Hercules keeps flying. Defence Minister Peter MacKay, however, has indicated that the wait will soon be over.

¹¹⁵ "Fixed-Wing Search and Rescue Aircraft Replacement Project," Public Services and Procurement Canada, last modified 19 January 2017, http://www.tpsgcpwgsc.gc.ca

¹¹⁶ "Fixed-Wing Search and Rescue Aircraft Replacement Project," Public Services and Procurement Canada, last modified 19 January 2017, http://www.tpsgcpwgsc.gc.ca

¹¹⁷ "Fixed-Wing Search and Rescue Aircraft Replacement Project," Public Services and Procurement Canada, last modified 19 January 2017, http://www.tpsgcpwgsc.gc.ca

Helicopters

CH-146 Griffon Helicopter (Bell 412)



Photo Credit: CH-146 Griffon, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- Part of Operation NANOOK in 2010 and 2011
- A utility transport vehicle, it has been in service since 1995 and its "primary role is tactical transportation of troops and material. It is also used at home and abroad for search and rescue (SAR) missions, surveillance and reconnaissance, casualty evacuation and counter-drug operations."¹²⁰
- In May 2013 the three Griffons at Canadian Forces Base Goose Bay were all grounded for repairs.¹²¹
- The Canadian Government plans to extend the life of the aging helicopters to 2024 to "bridge the gap until a replacement capability is acquired through the Tactical Reconnaissance Utility Helicopter project". The cost of the project is estimated at \$500 million \$1.5 billion.¹²²

CH-149 Cormorant



Photo Credit: CH-149 Cormorant, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page

- The Air Force's only dedicated search and rescue (SAR) helicopter
- A range of over 1000 km without refuelling
- Equipped with a full ice protection system¹²³
- Defence Acquisition Guide 2015: The Cormorant is to receive a mid-life upgrade, the objective of which is "to extend the all-weather rotary wing search and rescue capability to at least 2040, to return the capability to the Trenton main operating base, and to provide capability improvements to enhance its overall mission effectiveness." The cost is estimated to be between \$500 million \$1.5 billion and the request for proposal is to be released in 2017. ¹²⁴
- Defence Acquisition Guide 2016: The request for proposal release has been pushed to 2018.¹²⁵

¹¹⁸ "Fixed-Wing Search and Rescue Aircraft Replacement Project," Public Services and Procurement Canada, last modified 19 January 2017, http://www.tpsgcpwgsc.gc.ca

¹¹⁹ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2014," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, June 2014, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹²⁰ "CH-149 Cormorant," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified August 2013, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca

¹²¹ National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces (June, 2014). Defence Acquisition Guide 2014, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca/en/business-defence-acquisition-guide/index.page</u>

¹²² "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹²³ "CH-149 Cormorant," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 1 August 2013, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹²⁴ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, March 2015, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹²⁵ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2016," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>



Photo Credit: CH-124 Sea King, Royal Canadian Air Force, http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft-current/ch-124.page

- Operates from destroyers and frigates in anti-submarine roles
- Also contribute to search and rescue, disaster relief, counter-narcotic operations, and fisheries and pollution patrols.
- To be replaced by the CH-148 Cyclone¹²⁶

CH-148 Cyclone



Photo Credit: CH-148 Cyclone, Royal Canadian Air Force, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca/en/aircraft.page</u>

- 28 are on order from Sikorsky, but has been a highly troubled program
 - More than 5 years behind schedule and cost over-runs
 - Canadian forces now have at least six interim versions of the Cyclone for pilot training.¹²⁷
- DND is expecting a fully capable CH-148 Cyclone delivered in 2018.¹²⁸
- DND says the Cyclone "will conduct Surface and Subsurface Surveillance and Control, utility and search and rescue missions. It will also provide tactical transport for national and international security efforts. ...[It] is built with lightning-strike and high-intensity radio frequency pulse protection. ...The Cyclone has a day-and-night flight capability, and can fly in most weather conditions in temperatures ranging from -51°C to +49°C. With a maximum cruise speed of 250 km/h, the CH-148 is approximately 10% faster than a Sea King. The Cyclone can also fly 450 km without refuelling."
- As of March 2017, the project is now in implementation stage, having accepted 11 Cyclones, and plans are to reach full operational capacity (28) by 2025.¹³⁰
 - "The cost is \$3.2 billion for acquisition project management, infrastructure and contingency costs. The cost for major in-service support until 2038 is \$5.8 billion."¹³¹

¹²⁶ "CH-124 Sea King," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 1 August 2013, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹²⁷ "CH 148 Cyclones delivered to Halifax airbase," CBC News, 19 June 2015, <u>http://www.cbc.ca</u>

¹²⁸ Department of National Defence, "Archived - Maritime Helicopter Project: Status (Fact Sheet)," Government of Canada, last modified June 2014, http://news.gc.ca

¹²⁹ "CH-148 Cyclone," Royal Canadian Air Force, last modified 18 September 2013, <u>http://www.rcaf-arc.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹³⁰ "CH-148 Cyclone procurement project," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 9 March 2017, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹³¹ "CH-148 Cyclone procurement project," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 9 March 2017, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

Medium to Heavy Lift Helicopter

- "The Department of National Defence (DND) acquired 15 advanced, multi-mission, Medium-to-Heavy lift helicopters, or more specifically the Canadian version of the F-model Chinook (also known as CH-147F)... Canada took delivery of the 15th and final Chinook in July 2014."¹³²
- "April 2015: Two Chinooks were deployed for the first time to Kapuskasing as a response to flooding." ¹³³
- "Domestic roles for the Chinook helicopters will focus on the provision of logistical or mobility support to CF Land Forces and CANSOFCOM, other Government departments, law enforcement agencies, or other civil authorities. The Chinook helicopter will provide a vital capability to conduct secondary Search and Rescue when required and support major air disaster response across the continent, particularly in Canada's North given increasing commercial air activity in that region. The Chinook will also be capable of responding to humanitarian emergencies such as fire, floods and earthquakes. The versatility, impressive capacity and long range of this helicopter make the Chinook ideal for operations in Canada's vast territory and demanding environment.¹³⁴
- "With a heavy-lift capability of up to 40 personnel or 11,363 kilograms of cargo, they will be able to deploy
 independently, including to the High Arctic. The operating range is increased to a basic 609 kilometres, with a
 mission radius of 370.4 kilometres."¹³⁵

Satellite Surveillance

RADARSAT

- RADARSAT-1 is an Earth observation satellite developed by Canada to monitor environmental changes and the planet's natural resources.
 - An operational radar satellite system capable of timely delivery of large amounts of data
 - Equipped with an aperture radar (SAR) instrument, it acquires images of the Earth day or night, in all weather and through cloud cover, smoke and haze.
 - Launched in November 1995¹³⁶
- RADARSAT-2 was launched in December 2007, Canada's next-generation commercial radar satellite, offering technical advancements to enhance marine surveillance, ice monitoring, disaster management, environmental monitoring, resource management and mapping in Canada and around the world. ¹³⁷ RADARSAT-2 is "one of Canada's most sophisticated satellites". Yet, "there are some recent concerns that the success of RADARSAT-2 is proving to be a headache for the Canadian government. According to a November 2012 admission by the Department of National Defence (DND), estimates by the Canadian Space Agency (CSA) have indicated that the government's "data allocation will expire by August 2017" due to the exponential growth of the demand for information in maritime domain awareness, a statement that has since been contradicted by sources at the CSA".
- "According to the CSA and DND, the RADARSAT Constellation Mission (RCM) remains on target for a 2018 launch".

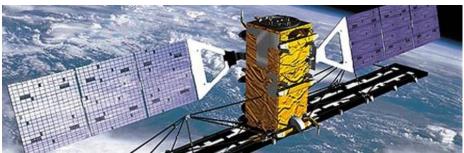


Photo Credit: RADASAT 2, Canadian Space Agency, http://www.asc-csa.gc.ca/eng/satellites/radarsat2/

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

¹³² "Fixed Wing Search and Rescue Aircraft Replacement Project," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 13 May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹³³ "Medium-to-heavy lift helicopter project: status," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 25 June 2015, http://www.forces.gc.ca ¹³⁴ The Role And Capabilities of the Chinook F Model

¹³⁵ "Canada's newest generation of Chinook helicopters," Flightglobal/Airspace Forum, 13 January 2013, http://www.flightglobal.com

¹³⁶ "RADARSAT-1," Canadian Space Agency, last modified 21 March 2014, <u>http://www.asc-csa.gc.ca</u>

¹³⁷ "RADARSAT-1," Canadian Space Agency, last modified 21 March 2014, <u>http://www.asc-csa.gc.ca</u>

¹³⁸ "Canadian satellites 'on target' to revolutionize maritime domain awareness," Defence IQ, 2014, <u>http://www.defenceiq.com</u>

RADARSAT Constellation

- Objectives:
 - "The evolution of the RADARSAT Program with the objective of ensuring C-band data continuity, enhanced
 operational use of SAR data and improved system reliability over the next decade." ¹³⁹
 - To provide complete coverage of Canada's land and oceans.
 - In addition to assisting in disaster management and in monitoring of environmental change, the constellation will make possible the monitoring of marine traffic in the north and beyond, according to MDA, through: "...repeat imaging of the same area at different times of day, dramatically improving the frequency of monitoring coastal zones, northern territories, Arctic waterways and other areas of strategic and defence interest. RCM will also incorporate automated identification system technology, which when combined with the powerful radar images, supports the immediate detection and identification of ships worldwide."¹⁴⁰
- Launches first planned for 2016 and 2017, but now "launch of the three satellites is targeted for the third quarter of 2018".¹⁴¹
- Plans for three new RADARSAT satellites were awarded in Jan 2013¹⁴²
- MacDonald, Dettwiler and Associates Ltd. (MDA) awarded \$706-million contract with the Canadian Space Agency
- The company will build, launch and provide initial operations for what is planned to be a constellation of three satellites.
 - Building on technology that MDA has developed through the Radarsat-1 and Radarsat-2 missions.

Maritime Monitoring and Messaging Micro-Satellite (M3MSat)

- Objectives:
 - DND says M3MSat will be able to track digital signals from ships and thus enhance the capacity to identify marine traffic, and to detect the direction and cruising speed of vessels to ensure that they legally and safely navigate Canadian waters.¹⁴³
 - Overall, M3MSat's mission aims to "improve Canada's space-based capabilities to detect ships and manage marine traffic. It is also testing a device that could change the way we monitor the health and safety of satellites."¹⁴⁴
- The launch of the M3MSat, a Canadian military satellite for maritime surveillance in conjunction with Radarsat 2, was delayed as the result of sanctions against Russia. It was to have been launched in Kazakhstan from a Russian facility.¹⁴⁵ The launch was re-scheduled for June 2016 and launched successfully from a facility in Sriharikota, India.¹⁴⁶

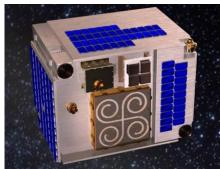


Photo Credit: M3MSat, Canadian Space Agency, http://www.asc-csa.gc.ca/eng/satellites/m3msat/

¹³⁹ "RADARSAT Constellation," Canadian Space Agency, last modified 30 March 2017, <u>http://www.asc-csa.gc.ca</u>

¹⁴⁰ "MDA awarded \$706 million contract to build three radar satellites," MDA Information Systems website, 9 January 2013, <u>http://www.mdacorporation.com</u> ¹⁴¹ "Building the North: Project List, Canada's Economic Action Plan," Government of Canada, date not available, <u>http://actionplan.gc.ca/</u>

¹⁴² The Canadian Press, "MacDonald, Dettwiler and Associates sign \$706M Radarsat deal," CBC News, 9 January 2013, <u>http://www.cbc.ca</u>

 ⁴³ Pugliese, David, "Russian sanctions have killed Canadian satellite launch," Ottawa Citizen, 24 April 2014, <u>www.ottawacitizen.com</u>

¹⁴⁴ "Maritime Monitoring and Messaging Microsatellite (M3MSat)," 22 June 2016, Canadian Space Agency, <u>http://www.asc-csa.gc.ca</u>

¹⁴⁵ "Maritime Monitoring and Messaging Microsatellite (M3MSat)," 11 May 2016, National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹⁴⁶ "Canada's M3MSat Successfully Launch," 22 June 2016, Government of Canada, <u>www.news.gc.ca</u>

Project Polar Epsilon

- Objectives:
 - Defence Acquisition Guide 2014: "Polar Epsilon 2 (PE2) will enhance existing Polar Epsilon (PE) capabilities...
 increasing the government of Canada's near-real time situational awareness of activities in Canada's three
 ocean approaches and... increased surveillance persistence of Canada's Arctic." The project will cost
 between \$100 million and \$249 million, with the final delivery anticipated 2019.¹⁴⁷
- Polar Epilson vs. Polar Epilson 2
 - "The Polar Epsilon project uses information from RADARSAT-2 to produce imagery for military commanders to use in order to conduct operations in their areas of responsibility, "including surveillance of Canada's Arctic region and maritime approaches, the detection of vessels, and support to CF operations globally.¹⁴⁸
 - Polar Epsilon 2 will use data from the next generation of Canadian Earth-observation satellites, known as the RADARSAT Constellation Mission, which is set to launch in 2018. "The data obtained from the RADARSAT Constellation Mission will be used for various surveillance needs ranging from monitoring of ice flows within Canada's coastal waters, providing surveillance of Canada's ocean approaches; monitoring environmental conditions, such as floods and forest fires; and managing and mapping natural resources in Canada and around the world."¹⁴⁹
- Current stage of Polar Epsilon went fully operational in August 2011.¹⁵⁰
- SIPRI's 2016 Background paper notes that, "this programme has been modified to use data from three civilian satellites, to be launched in 2018, linked to a military network to be ordered in 2017 for delivery in 2019."¹⁵¹

Enhanced Satellite Communication Project

- "The Canadian military wants to build a new constellation that would provide 24-hour satellite communications for the Arctic region as early as 2023... The program would likely include at least two satellites in an elliptical orbit and could cost about \$2.4 billion Canadian dollars, said Col. Jeff Dooling, director of space requirements for the Canadian Department for National Defence." ¹⁵²
- Research for the program has been drawn from an incomplete Canadian Space Agency study that started in 2010.¹⁵³
- "The program would feature X-band and Ka-band communications as well as ultra-high frequency narrowband communications over the North Pole." ¹⁵⁴
- According to the Canadian *Defence Acquisition Guide 2016, this project will complete the CAF's SATCOM* Roadmap.¹⁵⁵

¹⁴⁸ "A new step for the Polar Epsilon project," *The Maple Leaf*, (Vol. 13, No. 24), Department of National Defence, 21 July 2010, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u> DND says: "Canadian Forces have been using this [Satellite] data for their Polar Epsilon Project—all-weather, day-night surveillance to detect and track foreign vessels, and maintain 'Arctic situational awareness' to respond to natural disasters, environmental crises, and assist with search and rescue." "The implementation phase of Polar Epsilon began in March 2009 with the design and construction phase of two new RADARSAT-2 ground stations, one on the

¹⁴⁹ "Polar Epilson 2 Project," Government of Canada, 17 June 2016, <u>http://news.gc.ca</u>

¹⁴⁷ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2014," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, June 2014, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

east coast in Masstown, N.S., and the other on the west coast in Aldergrove, B.C. The ground stations will be whole low indexident 2 ground stations, one of the Government of Canada and are expected to be operational by March 2011. Completion of the Polar Epsilon project is expected by late 2011.

[&]quot;The advantage of Polar Epsilon is that its imagery can be used to accurately determine locations, which allows for a more efficient and cost-effective use of other Canadian military assets, such as patrol aircraft and ships. Polar Epsilon can also be used to survey for oil or water pollution and airplane or satellite crash sites. The project, however, does not have the capability to detect missiles, nor can it track individuals. The data provided by Polar Epsilon is used primarily to support military operations, but will prove invaluable in supporting the regular activities of numerous departments and agencies."

¹⁵⁰ "Polar Epsilon keeps watch over Canada's coastal waters," MDA Information Systems website, date not available, <u>http://www.mdacorporation.com</u>

¹⁵¹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

¹⁵² Gruss, Mike, "Canada eyes \$2.4 billion Arctic satellite communications constellation," Space News, 30 June 2016, <u>http://spacenews.com</u>

¹⁵³ Gruss, Mike, "Canada eyes \$2.4 billion Arctic satellite communications constellation," Space News, 30 June 2016, <u>http://spacenews.com</u>

¹⁵⁴ Gruss, Mike, "Canada eyes \$2.4 billion Arctic satellite communications constellation," Space News, 30 June 2016, <u>http://spacenews.com</u>

¹⁵⁵ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2016," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

Uninhabited Aerial Vehicles

RQ-21A Blackjack

- The Canadian government's 2016 acquisition of 5 RQ-21A Blackjacks from the U.S. Navy brings resolution to the DND's lengthy Joint Uninhabited Surveillance and Target Acquisition System (JUSTAS) project to secure surveillance drones.¹⁵⁶ Delivery of the Blackjacks is set for 2021, and the \$14.2 million contract also includes training on how to use the new technology.¹⁵⁷
- The Blackjacks, made by Insitu, have a 16 ft wingspan, 16 hr endurance, and can reach 19 500 ft.¹⁵⁸ They are designed for surveillance purposes only.¹⁵⁹
- This arrangement makes delivery ahead of schedule, as the contract award for JUSTAS was originally planned for 2020 with final delivery in 2025.¹⁶⁰
- Imagery from Project Epsilon is not frequent enough to allow for real time tracking of ship traffic, so it is argued that aerial surveillance has to augment satellite surveillance, notably through UAVs.¹⁶¹

¹⁵⁶ Ruskin, Brett, "Canada's new \$14.1M fixed-wing drones are runway free", Canadian Broadcasting Company, 15 July 2016, http://www.cbc.ca

¹⁵⁷ Wagner, Elise, "After a decade, Canada has drones," NATO Association of Canada, 3 September 2016, <u>http://natoassociation.ca</u>

¹⁵⁸ Wagner, Elise, "After a decade, Canada has drones," NATO Association of Canada, 3 September 2016, http://natoassociation.ca

¹⁵⁹ Ruskin, Brett, "Canada's new \$14.1M fixed-wing drones are runway free", Canadian Broadcasting Company, 15 July 2016, http://www.cbc.ca

¹⁶⁰ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, March 2015, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁶¹ Levon Bond, "JUSTAS and Project Epsilon: Integrated Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance of the Canadian Arctic," Canadian Military Journal, Vol.

^{11,} No. 4, Autumn 2011, http://www.journal.forces.gc.ca/vo11/no4/doc/Page%2024%20Bond%20Article%20English.pdf

5 Heron CU-170

- Leased since 2011from MacDonald, Dettwiler and Associates of Vancouver, BC to replace the Sperwer and "meet the urgent and growing demand for UAV support to operations until a long-term UAV solution is in place"¹⁶²
- Long term plan secured in 2016 when Canadian government signed a contract with the US Navy to acquire their RQ-21A Blackjacks. See 'RQ-21A Blackjacks' for more details.

2.2.2 Land

Not available

2.2.3 Sea

Ships - Coast Guard Icebreakers



Photo Credit: CCGS Louis S. St-Laurent, Canadian Coast Guard, <u>http://www.ccg-gcc.gc.ca/Fleet/Vessel?vessel_id=81</u>

- Canadian Coast Guard icebreakers are the primary naval presence in the Canadian Arctic.
 - They are said to "respond to specific sovereignty challenges identified by the Canadian Government"¹⁶³
 - In the summer of 2014, Canada sent two icebreakers to the High Arctic to gather scientific data "to bid for control of the sea floor under and beyond the North Pole".¹⁶⁴
- Support for Canadian Navy ships on Arctic voyages and commercial ships, and perform research
- The Coast Guard's icebreaking capabilities have been considered lacking. For instance, they are only able to
 provide Arctic icebreaking service during summer months (beginning in late June and going into November).¹⁶⁵
- Project Resolute: Presented on April 21 2017 as a solution to meet the Canadian Coast Guard's capability shortages. The project is a "multi-company partnership provides Canada with the world's four most powerful, privately-owned multi-role icebreakers at a fraction of the cost of building from scratch."¹⁶⁶
 - This flexible leasing arrangement will address Canada's icebreaking and oil-spill response capability requirements.
- The Coast Guard fleet currently includes:
 - Two heavy icebreakers:
 - CCGS Louis S. St-Laurent
 - CCGS Terry Fox
 - Four medium icebreakers:
 - CCGS Amundsen [a research vessel¹⁶⁷]
 - CCGS Des Groseilliers
 - CCGS Henry Larsen
 - CCGS Pierre Radisson
 - Seven light icebreakers (high-endurance multi-tasked vessels which can operate only in the Western Arctic).¹⁶⁸

¹⁶² "CU-170 Heron," Canadian Forces Military, 5 June 2016, http://canadianforcesmilitary.com

¹⁶³ "Icebreaking Levels of Service," Canadian Coast Guard, last modified 24 June 2013, http://www.ccg-gcc.gc.ca

¹⁶⁴ Weber, Bob, "Canadian icebreakers head out to map Arctic sea floor," The Canadian Press, 8 August 2014, <u>http://www.theglobeandmail.com</u>

¹⁶⁵ "Icebreaking Levels of Service," Canadian Coast Guard, last modified 24 June 2013, <u>http://www.ccg-gcc.gc.ca</u>

¹⁶⁶ "Project Resolute holds the key to Canadian Coast Guard icebreaker capability shortages," PRNewswire, 21 April 2017, https://www.benzinga.com ¹⁶⁷ Amundsen - <u>http://www.amundsen.ulaval.ca/index.php?url=1</u>

¹⁶⁸ "Icebreaking Levels of Service," Canadian Coast Guard, last modified 24 June 2013, <u>http://www.ccg-gcc.gc.ca</u>

- A new polar icebreaker (CCGS John G. Diefenbaker) is planned for the Coast Guard
 - Design contract has been issued and construction contract awarded to Seaspan Marine Corp. of B.C.¹⁶⁹New \$1.3 billion ship was to be delivered in 2017 for sea trials.¹⁷⁰Arctic performance trial and full operational capability was to be achieved in 2018.¹⁷¹
 - In 2013, production of this new icebreaker was delayed to prioritize the non-Arctic acquisition of support ships for the navy. SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper reported that, "The icebreaker will not be ready before 2021 and, with the price estimated in 2014 at 1.3 billion Canadian dollars (\$1.2 billion), there is some speculation that it might be cancelled."¹⁷²
 - Most recent updates from the Canadian government state that, due to supply ship delays, the completion of the Diefenbaker will be delayed until 2022 or 2023.



¹⁶⁹ Brian Pehora, "Coast Guard: new \$1.3 billion Arctic icebreaker to be ready by 2022", Nunatsiaq News Online, 28 January 2016, http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca

¹⁷⁰ Brian Pehora, "Coast Guard: new \$1.3 billion Arctic icebreaker to be ready by 2022", Nunatsiaq News Online, 28 January 2016, http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca

¹⁷¹ "Building the North: Project List, Canada's Economic Action Plan," Government of Canada, date not available, <u>http://actionplan.gc.ca/</u>

¹⁷² Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

¹⁷³ Berthiaume, Lee, "New delay slows construction of navy supply ships, polar icebreaker," The Canadian Press, 9 December 2016, http://www.thecanadianpress.com/

Ships - Navy

The Canadian Navy has a fleet of 33 vessels (3 Destroyers, 12 Frigates, 2 Supply Ships, 12 Coastal Defence; 4 submarines)¹⁷⁴

- While the Destroyers and Frigates are "ice-strengthened" and have the range to sail in the Arctic, they do not have icebreaking capabilities
- The home ports are Maritime Forces Atlantic (MARPLANT) in Halifax, and Maritime Forces Pacific (MARPAC) in Esquimalt, B.C.
- The Canadian Surface Combatant project surrounds a plan build and outfit a fleet of up to 15 new warships, with construction starting in the mid 2020s.¹⁷⁵ With Ottawa's June 2017 plan unveiled to increase military spending significantly over the next decade, the project is now expected to cost between \$56-billion and \$60-billion (an increase in 15-30 billion from the previous government's forecast).¹⁷⁶
 - "Judy Foote, minister of public services and procurement, said in June 2016 that up to 15 new Canadian Surface Combatant ships will replace the navy's present Iroquois-class destroyer and its seven Halifax-class frigates that form the bulk of the navy's Atlantic Fleet."

The navy's last research vessel, CFAV Quest, will be decommissioned due to cost-cutting measures, "leaving the country's defence scientists without their own ship to conduct research in the Arctic and other locations, according to documents leaked to Postmedia".¹⁷⁷

Arctic/Offshore Patrol Ship (AOPS) procurement

- The shipbuilding strategy originally announced by Harper in 2011 was "an umbrella agreement that designated the Irving shipyard in Halifax and the Seaspan shipyard in British Columbia as the two locations." Currently, the Trudeau government is negotiating details of the agreement with the yards.¹⁷⁸
- According to the Defence Acquisition Guide 2015, "the Naval Shipbuilding Projects Office (NSPO) intends to
 establish an In-Service Support (ISS) Contract that combines the Arctic/Offshore Patrol Ships' and Joint Support
 Ships' ISS requirements into a single, 35-year through-life contract."¹⁷⁹
- More details on the contract status:
 - The project was announced by the Harper government as a \$3.1 billion project¹⁸⁰, though the budget increased in 2015 to ensure the delivery of all six Harry DeWolf-class vessels.¹⁸¹
 - \circ As of June 2017, the keel has been laid for the second of the six ships.¹⁸²
 - The beginning of construction on the Royal Canadian Navy's (RCN) first Harry DeWolf-class of arctic offshore patrol vessels (AOPS) began in June 2016.
 - Irving Shipbuilding said the following in a September 2016 statement issued to the press: "Construction on the first AOPS vessel, HMCS Harry DeWolf, is well underway with 50 of the ship's 64 components complete or under construction. On August 25, Irving Shipbuilding was pleased to cut steel on the second AOPS, the future HMCS Margaret Brooke. HMCS Harry DeWolf is scheduled to be delivered to the Royal Canadian Navy in 2018."¹⁸⁴
 - Delivery of the first vessel is still on track for 2018, with the whole class expected to be in service by 2022.¹⁸⁵

¹⁷⁴ "Royal Canadian Navy, Fleet & Unit," Royal Canadian Navy, last modified 19 August 2013, <u>http://www.navy-marine.forces.gc.ca</u>

¹⁷⁵Pugliese, David, "Company to be chosen by 2017 to design new navy ships," Ottawa Citizen, 1 May 2015, http://ottawacitizen.com/

¹⁷⁶ LeBlanc, Daniel, Chase, Stephen, "Ottawa lays out \$62-billion in new military spending over 20 years," The Globe and Mail, 7 June 2017, www.theglobeandmail.com

¹⁷⁷ Pugliese, David, "Say Goodbye to Canadian Forces Auxiliary Vessel Quest – military quietly orders ship to be "divested"", Ottawa Citizen, 2 September 2016, http://ottawacitzen.com

¹⁷⁸ Pugliese, David, "Irving facing significant offshore challenges in building Arctic Offshore Patrol Ships," Ottawa Citizen, 8 September 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

¹⁷⁹ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2015," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, March 2015, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁸⁰ Jordan Press, "PM talks up need for Arctic military presence," Vancouver Sun, 25 August 2012, <u>http://www.vancouversun.com</u>

¹⁸¹ Gunn, Andrea, "First of Irvings Halifax-made patrol ships nearly ready," The Chronicle Herald, http://thechronicleherald.ca

¹⁸² "Keel laid of Canadian Navy's second Happy DeWolf-class AOPS," Naval-Technology.com, 1 June 2017, <u>http://www.naval-technology.com</u>

¹⁸³ "Construction begins on Canadian Navy's first Harry DeWolf-class AOPS," NavalTechnology.com, 14 June 2016, <u>www.naval-technology.com</u>

¹⁸⁴ Pugliese, David, "Irving facing significant offshore challenges in building Arctic Offshore Patrol Ships," Ottawa Citizen, 8 September 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

¹⁸⁵ Gunn, Andrea, "First of Irvings Halifax-made patrol ships nearly ready," The Chronicle Herald, http://thechronicleherald.ca

- Details on the ships themselves:
 - The AOPS will have ice-breaking capabilities and the ability to provide support to the CH 148 Cyclone.
 - The vessels will "allow the RCN to operate further north on a sustained basis into the Canadian Arctic, while boosting its Arctic collaboration with the Canadian Coast Guard, as well as other governmental departments and international allies."¹⁸⁶

Submarines

The Canadian Press reports that the Navy has begun exploring a replacement for the current Victoria class submarines:

- The Canadian Press reported in August 2012 that a DND briefing note calls for "bigger, quieter boats that can perform stealth missions, launch undersea robots and fire guided missiles at shore targets." Rather than protecting sea lanes, subs are now sought more for coastline surveillance, intelligence-gathering, and ship to shore firing:
 - Coastline surveillance and intelligence gathering includes Arctic
 - International missions are also a consideration: as Vice-Admiral Paul Maddison told a Senate Committee in 2012, to lose [a submarine capability] for a G8 nation, a NATO country like Canada, a country that continues to lead internationally, and aspires to lead more, I would consider that a critical loss."¹⁸⁷
- The 2014 procurement guide confirms plans to "extend the service life of the Victoria Class submarine beyond its current mid-2020s end of life,"¹⁸⁸ and the 2016 Defence Acquisition Guide estimates delivery of the project is 2026-2036.¹⁸⁹ The Submarine Equipment Life Extension (SELEX) Project is estimated above \$1.5 billion.¹⁹⁰

Under Water Surveillance Systems

"To improve the situational awareness of the Canadian Forces in the Arctic, a four-year Northern Watch Technology Demonstration Project is underway, run by Defence Research and Development Canada. Northern Watch researchers are testing both surface and underwater sensors "to collect surveillance data at a navigation chokepoint." They are also running simulations using data from surface and space-based sensors."¹⁹¹

- In April 2012 Operation Nunalivut included diving operations off of Devon Island to install "undersea surveillance devices."¹⁹²
- Defence Research and Development Canada released a report on the technical results of the Northern Watch project in June 2016. The project was successful in shedding light on successes and limitations of the NW Surveillance system.¹⁹³
 - The report notes that much more work needs to be done before an autonomous/remote-controlled multisensor surveillance system could become a reality.
 - Project shortfalls arose because the costs were beyond the reach of the project funding.

Amphibious Ship to Shore Craft

- Acquisition a matter of some discussion in early 2010s, but no formal action has taken place to aquire vessels.
- David Pugliese reported in 2012 that "the country's decision to build a fleet of Arctic and offshore patrol vessels, as well as a new Polar-class icebreaker, has sparked discussions between the Army and Arktos Developments, Surrey, British Columbia. The company builds the Arktos amphibious craft, and company President Bruce Seligman said the government is interested in placing those onboard the patrol vessels and icebreaker. The craft originally was designed to evacuate people from oil rigs, and it can carry 52 in that mode. Arktos has sold 21 amphibious craft so far, mostly to the oil and gas industry. Seligman said in the Canadian situation, the Arktos could be used as a "connector" to transport people from ship to shore."¹⁹⁴

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

¹⁸⁶ "Construction begins on Canadian Navy's first Harry DeWolf-class AOPS," NavalTechnology.com, 14 June 2016, <u>www.naval-technology.com</u>

¹⁸⁷ Brewster, Murray, "Navy planners trying to sell Ottawa on submarine replacement plan," *Globe and Mail*, 20 August 2012, <u>http://www.theglobeandmail.com</u> ¹⁸⁸ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2014," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, June 2014, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁸⁹ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2016," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, May 2016, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁹⁰ "Defence Acquisition Guide 2014," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, June 2014, http://www.forces.gc.ca

¹⁹¹ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, <u>http://www.parl.gc.ca</u>

¹⁹² "It's Arctic spring exercise season for Canada's military: Operation Nunalivut to kick off April 10," Nunatsiaq News, April 9, 2012, http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca

¹⁹³ Heard, Garry, J., McArthur, Bruce, Inglis, Gary, "Overview of the technical results of the Northern Watch Project," Defence Research and Development Canada,' June 2016, <u>http://cradpdf.drdc-rddc.gc.ca/PDFS/unc253/p804761_A1b.pdf</u>

¹⁹⁴ Referred to by David Pugliese, "Canada Ramps Up Arctic Arsenal," 25 January 2012, http://www.defensenews.com

2.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)

Army Personnel

- "A special small battalion-sized (500 troops) regular army unit for Arctic operations is to be set up"¹⁹⁵
- "Canada also is creating a 500-member Army response capability for the Arctic"¹⁹⁶
- Canadian reserves unit in Yellowknife to be increased to 100 by 2019¹⁹⁷
- "Four Arctic Response Company Groups—Canadian Forces reservists from militia regiments in southern Canada are being trained in Arctic operations in case they need to be deployed there. On that last point, however, the commander of Joint Task Force (North) was asked whether southern troops have the ability to do more than operate at the survival level and with a minimum of tactical capability in the Arctic. 'No, we do not,' BGen Millar told the Committee, 'In years past we did. We had tremendous capability with the Canadian Forces to operate and deploy to the North.' But he added that since the attacks of 9-11, 'We are at the stage of rebuilding that very capability that we used to have.""¹⁹⁸"However, Major General Alan Howard, assistant chief of the land staff of the Canadian Army, complained that the Canadian Army has lost the 'ability to operate up north in the Arctic' because of the focus on operations in Afghanistan. The army's capabilities for Arctic operations are to be improved after Canada's withdrawal from Afghanistan in 2012. In addition, a special small battalion-sized (500 troops) regular army unit for Arctic operations is to be set up. Since 2008, Canadian reserve forces have included an Arctic company, based in Yellowknife, NWT, which under the Northern Strategy is planned to have a strength of 100 by 2019."¹⁹⁹
- A 2015 policy paper on the CAF's presence in the Arctic noted that Canada is "establishing a number of small, but well trained, reserve and permanent force units designed for rapid and agile response [in the Arctic]".²⁰⁰
 - Excerpt from the policy paper:

The Army can now, theoretically, deploy a staggered series of responders anywhere in the North to reinforce the ever capable Rangers, or deploy to an area without a Ranger patrol. This capability is limited in size but appropriate to the sorts of threats envisioned. Given the logistical and transportation difficulties inherent to Arctic operations, a small self-sufficient force is preferable, for instance, to the kinds of regiment level deployments and airdrops practiced from the 1940s to the 1980s. ²⁰¹

Canadian Coast Guard

- In 2016, Coast Guard activity in the Arctic included the deployment of eight CCG icebreakers.²⁰²
- Planning priorities for 2016 CCG Arctic operations included: escort and icebreaking for commercial vessel traffic, icebreaking in support of community resupply, navigational aid maintenance.²⁰³
- "Planning for Arctic Operations is carried out throughout the year but the new season officially starts with the opening of the Marine Communications and Traffic Services (MCTS) Centre in Igaluit."204
- Creation of a Coast Guard Auxiliary in the Arctic is promised as part of Canada's new \$1.5 billion oceans protections plan, unveiled in November 2016 by three federal government departments.²⁰⁵

¹⁹⁵ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012.

¹⁹⁶ Referred to by David Pugliese, "Canada Ramps Up Arctic Arsenal," 25 January 2012, http://www.defensenews.com

¹⁹⁷ Referred to by David Pugliese, "Canada Ramps Up Arctic Arsenal," 25 January 2012, http://www.defensenews.com

¹⁹⁸ Wallin, Pamela, Dallaire, Romeo, "Sovereignty and Security in Canada's Arctic: Interim Report," March 2011 Interim Senate Report Standing Senate Committee on National Security and Defence, March 2011, http://www.parl.gc.ca

¹⁹⁹ SIPRI, referencing: DeSilva-Ranasinghe, S., Interview (with Major General Alan Howard), Jane's Defence Weekly, 12 Jan. 2011, p. 34. DeSilva-Ranasinghe (note 16), p. 34; Prime Minister of Canada (note 14); and Huebert (note 10). O'Dwyer, D. and Pugliese, D., 'Canada, Russia build Arctic forces', Defence News, 6 Apr. 2009. Huebert (note 9), p. 9; Huebert (note 10); and 'Canada's Arctic strategy', CBC News, 27 July 2009, http://www.cbc.ca

²⁰⁰ Lajeunesse, Adam, "The Canadian Armed Forces in the Arctic: Purpose, Capabilities, and Requirements," Canadian Global Affairs Institute, May 2015, http://www.cgai.ca

²⁰¹ Lajeunesse, Adam, "The Canadian Armed Forces in the Arctic: Purpose, Capabilities, and Requirements," Canadian Global Affairs Institute, May 2015, http://www.cgai.ca

[&]quot;Canadian Coast Guard Arctic Operations 2016," Government of Canada, 29 July 2016, http://news.gc.ca

²⁰³ "Canadian Coast Guard Arctic Operations 2016," Government of Canada, 29 July 2016, http://news.gc.ca

²⁰⁴ "Canadian Coast Guard Arctic Operations 2016," Government of Canada, 29 July 2016, http://news.gc.ca

²⁰⁵ "Arctic will share in Canada's new \$1.5 billion oceans protection plan," Nunatsiaq News, 8 November 2016, http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca

3. Recurring Operations and Exercises

"The Canadian Government had ceased conducting Arctic military exercises at the end of the Cold War in 1989; however, in 2002, the Canadian Government was one of the first Arctic states to recommend these exercises amidst a growing concern led by a succession of Canadian Forces Northern Commanders."²⁰⁶

Current Canadian National Defence Minister Harjit S. Sajjan, under the Trudeau government, has named the protection of Arctic borders as a key security priority for Canada. Training exercises enhance troops' ability to quickly respond to threats and domestic emergencies, such as natural disasters, extreme weather events and other hazards.²⁰⁷

Operations Occurring Annually

Operation NANOOK

The largest of three major sovereignty operations conducted annually in Canada's North, Operation NANOOK takes place in several locations across the Northwest Territories and Nunavut, in the high and eastern arctic. The objectives of Operation NANOOK are:

- To assert Canada's sovereignty over its northernmost regions;
- To enhance the Canadian Forces' ability to operate in Arctic conditions;
- To improve coordination in whole-of-government operations; and
- To maintain interoperability with mission partners for maximum effectiveness in response to safety and security issues in the North.²⁰⁸

The operation involves personnel and assets from across Canada, and may be drawn from Navy, Army, Air Force, and the Canadian Special Operations Forces Command. The size and make-up of the operation vary, but always include:

- 1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group, a Reserve formation of the Canadian Army headquartered in Yellowknife, with 60 patrol units distributed in communities across the North, and
- 440 "Vampire" Transport Squadron, an RCAF unit based in Yellowknife, flying the CC-138 Twin Otter, a utility transport aircraft designed for short take-off and landing.²⁰⁹

Conducted annually since 2007, the operation has also involved international military partners, mainly from the US, Canadian federal government departments and agencies, provincial, territorial, and municipal governments, as well as non-governmental agencies. It typically involves simultaneous activities at sea, on land and in the air, and the number of personnel has ranged from about 650 to more than 1,250.

Operation Nanook 2016, occurring in late August/early September, focused on interagency operations with federal and territorial agencies in the Yukon and Nunavut. Training in the Yukon centred around responding to an earthquake, while training in the Rankin Inlet region of Nunavut surrounded responding to a security crisis.²¹⁰

According to the Department of National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, "Operation NANOOK 2016 enabled the Canadian Armed Forces to showcase its ability to operate effectively in the North while improving relationships with northern partners that would be required to respond to a request for assistance in the event of a real emergency."²¹¹

Operation Nevus

 Annual operation to maintain and repair the microwave communication system across Ellesmere Island that links the Canadian Forces Station Alert to Eureka (400 km south of Alert) through the High Arctic Data Communications System (HADCS).²¹²

²⁰⁶ Rob Huebert, "The Newly Emerging Arctic Security Environment," Canadian Defence and Foreign Affairs Institute, March 2010, http://www.cdfai.org

²⁰⁷"Canadian Army conducts training to maintain arctic readiness," army-technology.com, 10 February 2016, <u>http://www.army-technology.com</u>

²⁰⁸ "Operation NANOOK," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 29 September 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

²⁰⁹ "Operation NANOOK," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 29 September 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

²¹⁰ Regehr, Ernie, "Operation NANOOK 2016 and DND aid to civil authorities," Disarming Arctic Security, 13 December 2016, <u>http://thesimonsfoundation.ca</u>

²¹¹ "Operation NANOOK," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 29 September 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

²¹² "Operation NEVUS," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 7 June 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

Operation NUNALIVUT

- One of three major sovereignty operations conducted annually in Canada's North, Operation NUNALIVUT takes place in the high Arctic.
- Operation NUNALIVUT 2017 ran from February 23 March 10, 2017.²¹³
- Over 200 Canadian military members, including 1st Canadian Ranger Patrol Group, participated in the operation with other government departments and agencies, focusing on long-range patrols, diving operations, and survival training in the High Arctic. During the operation, while conducting training a CC-138 Twin Otter crew rescued two hunters who were stranded near Hall Beach.
- Initiated in 2007, Operation NUNALIVUT is an annual operation in the High Arctic to provide an opportunity for the CAF to operate in northernmost regions of Canada, to demonstrate the ability to operate in the harsh winter environment in remote areas, and to enhance the CAF's capability to respond to a variety of situations in northern Canada.²¹⁴
- The objectives of *Operation NUNALIVUT* are: ²¹⁵
 - Annual exercise involving the Rangers;
 - To assert Canada's sovereignty over its northernmost regions;
 - o To enhance the Canadian Forces' ability to operate in Arctic conditions; and
 - To maintain interoperability with mission partners for maximum effectiveness in response to safety and security issues in the North.

Operation NUNAKPUT

A "whole-of-government" operation that emphasizes aid to law enforcement in the north and takes place in the Mackenzie River, Great Slave Lake and Beaufort Sea region of the western Arctic.²¹⁶

Conducted annually since 2007, Operation NUNAKPUT 2016 took place from July 5-20 and "consisted of a series of maritime patrols, training opportunities, and community engagements".²¹⁷

Exercise STALWART GOOSE

An annual exercise aimed at qualifying Canadian troops to operate in the North.

Exercise STALWART GOOSE 16: Soldiers from the 5th Canadian Division's Arctic Response Company Group (ARCG) traveled again to Goose Bay, Newfoundland, and Labrador to test their survival skills and enhance their combat skills in extreme cold weather. The 2016 exercise consisted of long range snowmobile patrols, building improvised shelters and defence structures, as well as ice roads and aircraft landing strips. Canadian Rangers continue to support the soldiers with their expertise in this area.²¹⁸

Exercise FIRST RUN²¹⁹

Located on Lake Winnipeg, First Run is an annual exercise for members of the Arctic Response Company Group (ARCG). It's held in preparation for Exercise ARCTIC RAM in Resolute Bay. First Run usually occurs annually in January, and last occurred January 2016.

Operations Occurring Bianually

Operation BOXTOP

Usually twice a year to resupply Canadian Forces Station Alert²²⁰

²¹³ Pugliese, David, "Canadian military Arctic operation wraps up – three hunters rescued," Ottawa Citizen, 10 March 2017, http://ottawacitizen.com

²¹⁴ Pugliese, David, "Canadian military Arctic operation wraps up – three hunters rescued," Ottawa Citizen, 10 March 2017, http://ottawacitizen.com

²¹⁵ "Operation NUNALIVUT," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 16 May 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

²¹⁶ "Operation NUNAKPUT," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 24 November 2014, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

²¹⁷ "Operation Nunakput," National defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 5 August 2016, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

²¹⁸ David Pugliese, "Soldiers from Arctic Response Company Group head to Goose Bay for winter exercises," Ottawa Citzen, 4 March 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

²¹⁹ "3rd Canadian Division Exercises and Operations," Government of Canada, http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca

²²⁰ "Operation Boxtop," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, last modified 11 May 2017, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

Operations Occurring Biennially

Exercise ARCTIC BISON

Exercise Arctic Bison 2017: A biennial winter exercise that is designed to "train members of the Regular and Reserve Forces of the Canadian Army in conducting long-range patrols, ground search and rescue, and casualty evacuation in the unforgiving environment of Canada's North."²²¹

Exercise ARCTIC BISON 2017 went from February 17-26 in Gimli, MB, including 200 soldiers in total.²²² 100 members of the Arctic Response Company Group (ARCG) traveled by snowmobile from Gimli to Berens Island on Lake Winnipeg, with the rest remaining at headquarters in Gimli for supportive roles.²²³

Exercise ARCTIC RAM

It is the largest and most complex Army-led exercise that takes place in the Canadian Arctic. It exists to ensure Canadian Army members are able to operate in extreme cold and harsh conditions in order to safeguard Canada's sovereignty. Resolute Bay offers a significant high arctic location to deploy to, further testing CAF capabilities.²²⁴

Exercise ARCTIC RAM 2016, bringing one hundred army reservists in the Arctic Response Company Group to Resolute Bay, Nunavut, marks the farthest north the Company has ever travelled for training.²²⁵

NOREX

Norex is designed "to test the mobility, sustainability and survivability" of 4th Canadian Division's Arctic Response Company Group and to maintain an Arctic response capability," said the Canadian Department of Defense.

Occurred first in 2015²²⁶ and most recently in March 2017, in Resolute Bay, Nunavut.²²⁷

²²¹ Sevunts, Levon, "Canadian Army Exercise ARCTIC BISON 2017 challenged by winter thaw," 18 February 2017, <u>http://www.rcinet.ca</u> ²²² Pugliese, David, "Canadian Army's Exercise Arctic Bison to start on Friday," Defense Watch, 16 February 2017,

http://ottawacitizen.com/news/national/defence-watch/canadian-armys-exercise-arctic-bison-to-start-on-friday

²²³ Sevunts, Levon, "Canadian Army Exercise ARCTIC BISON 2017 challenged by winter thaw," 18 February 2017, http://www.rcinet.ca

²²⁴ Pugliese, David, "Canadian Army to conduct winter warfare exercises in Arctic and Quebec," Ottawa Citizen, 20 January 2016, <u>http://ottawacitizen.com/</u>

²²⁵"Army reservists test their mettle in high Arctic," CTV Winnipeg, 13 February 2016, <u>http://winnipeg.ctvnews.ca</u>

²²⁶ Canadian Army "Norex 2015," Government of Canada, last modified 20 March 2015, http://www.army-armee.forces.gc.ca

²²⁷ "Exercise Norex 2017 gets underway in Nunavut's High Arctic," 20 March 2017, Nunatsiaq News, <u>http://www.nunatsiaqonline.ca</u>

USA

1. Security Assets available for Operations in the North

1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)

1.1.1 Air

Eielson Air Force Base (near Fairbanks)²²⁸

- 354th Fighter Wing
- 354th Operations Group
- Includes airborne early warning
- Hosts National Guard Air Refuelling Wing
- Air Force Technical Applications Center
- Arctic Survival School
- Rescue Squadron
- Training Squadron
- DOD Report, May 2011:

"Eielson Air Force Base serves as home to a fighter wing and an Air National Guard air refuelling wing. The base provides significant aerial throughput capacity and can support SAR missions that extend north of the Alaska Range."²²⁹

- April 2016: "The Department of Defense has asked Congress to fund seven construction projects at Eielson for fiscal 2017, which starts Oct. 1, 2016."²³⁰ This request came as a response to the Air Force's announcement of plans to begin stationing 54 F-35s at the base near Fairbanks in 2020.²³¹ A release from US Congress representative Don Young's office lists projects planned for 5 sites in Alaska, including updates at Eielson Air Force Base related to the planned basing of F-35 fighter jets.²³²
 - \$500 million in new construction is planned for Eielson Air Force Base alone to support the upcoming deployment of the F-35 Fighters.²³³
 - As of May 2017, construction of the new facilities at Eielson is well underway. For instance, "work is just getting under way on a \$22 million building...that will enable pilots of the new F-35 fighters that are coming here to train in a computer-simulated environment."²³⁴

Elmendorf Air Force Base (near Anchorage):²³⁵

- Combined with Fort Richardson to form Joint Base Elmendorf-Richardson (JBER) in 1 October 2010.²³⁶ Hosts the Alaskan NORAD Region
- Aerospace warning
- Hosts the 11th Air Force
- Mission: "Provide ready warriors and infrastructure for homeland defense, decisive force projection, and aerospace command and control."
- The joint Elmendorf-Richardson base maintains "three wings (22 aircraft each) of fighters for air defence. The older F-15s that equipped these wings are gradually being replaced with new F-22 raptors. Ultimately, the Americans plan to deploy up to 1/5 of their fleet of new F-22s in Alaska."²³⁷

- ²³⁰ "Congress split over funding for F-35 infrastructure at Eielson Air Force Base," The Associated Press, 15 April 2016, <u>http://www.adn.com</u>
- ²³¹ "Congress split over funding for F-35 infrastructure at Eielson Air Force Base," The Associated Press, 15 April 2016, <u>http://www.adn.com</u>
- ²³² Bross, Dan, "Congress passes bills of Alaska military projects," Alaska Public Media, 19 May 2016, <u>http://www.alaskapublic.org</u>
- ²³³ Bross, Dan, "Eielson Air Force Base has new construction plan for incoming F-35 flighters," Alaska Public Media, 19 August 2016, http://www.alaskapublic.org
 ²³⁴ Ellis, Tim, "Construction at area's Air Force installations to inject \$1.5 billion into Interior economy," Alaska Public Media, 27 April 2017,
- http://www.alaskapublic.org

²²⁸ US Air Force - <u>http://www.eielson.af.mil/units/index.asp</u>

²²⁹ "Report to Congress on Arctic Operations and the Northwest Passage," Department of Defense, May 2011, <u>http://www.defense.gov</u>

²³⁵ US Air Force - <u>http://www.jber.af.mil/units/index.asp</u>

²³⁶ "Welcome to JBER," Military,com, date referenced 19 May 2017, <u>http://www.military.com</u>

²³⁷ Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf

• From May 2011 DOD Report to Congress:

"In the Anchorage area, Joint Base Elmendorf-Richardson contains a combined military population of more than 12,000 and serves as home to a U.S. Air Force fighter wing, a C-17-equipped air transport unit, an Army Brigade Combat Team, and support units. Additionally, an active duty C-130 squadron will be established in Fiscal Year 2011, with expected initial operational capability in August 2011. The base provides significant capacity such as runways, ramp space, air space command and control, and fuel infrastructure to support throughput for aircraft, mid-air refuelling operations, aerial command and control, ISR operations, and weather forecasting. The move of the 176th Wing (Alaska Air National Guard), with its C-130s and helicopters, from Kulis Air National Guard Base in 2011 added significant search and rescue capabilities as well. The resident Air Force and Army support units provide extensive capabilities in communications, logistics, engineering, ground transportation, and medical support, including a 60-bed hospital."²³⁸

Eareckson Air Station²³⁹

- Oriented toward supporting Pacific operations
- Located on the Island of Shemya
- North Warning System
- Alaska's northern coast is lined with 4 long-range and 3 short-range radars of the North Warning System (the main portion of the system spans the north of Canada).

Air Station, Kodiak²⁴⁰

- US Coast Guard Station
- Helicopters and HC-130J Hercules aircraft based on Kodiak Island operate over the Bering Sea and into the Arctic, and northern Alaska

Pacific Spaceport Complex Alaska (PCSA) (formerly known as Kodiak Launch Complex)

- "PSCA is a launch range owned and operated by AAC, an agency of the State of Alaska. PSCA is located at Narrow Cape on Kodiak Island, Alaska and occupies over 3,700 acres. The complex provides integration, checkout, and launch facilities to Government and commercial customers desiring to launch suitably sized vehicles. The launch site is focused on providing responsive and efficient launch capability for polar, sun synchronous, and high inclination orbits."²⁴¹
- An Alaska Public Media report in August 2016 announced that PSCA will be active again by end of month after a launch failure damaged the complex in 2014.²⁴²

Air Station, Sitka

- US Coast Guard, south Alaska
- The unit maintains a 24-hour search and rescue alert crew which utilizes three Sikorsky MH-60T Jayhawk helicopters
- Also environmental response capabilities²⁴³

Thule Air Base in Greenland

- According to SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper, this base is the "most northerly US air base but it currently houses only a large intercontinental ballistic missile (ICBM) detection radar and no aircraft."²⁴⁴ It is located 750 miles into the Arctic Circle.²⁴⁵
- According to the US Air Force, "Thule Air Base is home to the 21st Space Wing's global network of sensors
 providing missile warning, space surveillance and space control to North American Aerospace Defense Command
 and Air Force Space Command."²⁴⁶

²³⁸ "Report to Congress on Arctic Operations and the Northwest Passage," Department of Defense, May 2011, http://www.defense.gov

²³⁹ "Eareckson Air Station," GlobalSecurity.Org, last modified 20 July 2011, <u>http://www.globalsecurity.org</u>

²⁴⁰ US Coast Guard - <u>http://www.uscg.mil/bsukodiak/general_info.asp</u>

²⁴¹ "Pacific Spaceport Complex – Alaska," Alaska Aerospace Corporation, no date, <u>http://akaerospace.com</u>

 ²⁴² Desroches, Kayla, "Alaska Aerospace Corporation launches into new period on island," Alaska Public Media, 18 August 2016, <u>http://www.alaskapublic.org</u>
 ²⁴³ US Coast Guard - <u>http://www.uscg.mil/d17/airstasitka/Mission.asp</u>

²⁴⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

²⁴⁵ "Arctic air base gets \$40 million upgrade in face of increasing missile threats," CBS News, 30 May 2017, http://www.cbsnews.com

²⁴⁶ US Air Force - <u>http://www.peterson.af.mil/units/821stairbase/index.asp</u>

- "In the vicinity of Baffin Bay, Thule Air Base, Greenland, is home to a BMEWS radar and Air Force satellite control network ground site. The base provides significant basing capacity such as a deep water port, a 10,000-foot runway, ramp space, radar approach control, and 20-million gallon fuel infrastructure to support throughput for aircraft, mid-air refuelling operations, aerial command and control, SAR operations, and weather forecasting. The resident Air Force support units provide capabilities in communications, logistics, engineering, ground transportation, and medical support, including an 8-bed hospital. Thule Air Base supports military, government, and Allied missions in the eastern Arctic."²⁴⁷
- According to CBS News in May 2017, "Thule's \$250 million radar just received a \$40 million software upgrade-one of six early-warning systems like this around the world being improved. More than 3,500 antennas can see
 3,000 miles into space."²⁴⁸

Refurbishing air base at Keflavic, Iceland

- Pentagon's 2017 budget proposal includes \$22 million request for refurbishing installations at Keflavic
- Plans to house American personnel as well as new anti-submarine reconnaissance aircraft, Boeing P-8 Poseidon
- This base was considered a valuable piece of American defences during the Cold War era, but had been slowly closing down in the years since.²⁴⁹

1.1.2 Land

Fort Greely²⁵⁰

- Hosts US BMD mid-course interceptors²⁵¹
- "Fort Greely is the site of the 49th Missile Defense Battalion (ARNG), which operates the BMDS ground-based interceptors at both Fort Greely and Vandenberg AFB, California.... Fort Greely also houses the support for the contractor logistics that sustains the missile system."²⁵²
- "Boasts 33 missile interceptors standing at 60ft with "kill vehicles" fixed at the tip, designed to blast enemy warheads out of the sky...The Pentagon, which has already spent more than £31billion [\$54 billion CAD] on the Ground-based Midcourse Defence system (GMD), has pledged to deploy eight additional missile interceptors at Fort Greely."253

Cold Regions Test Center (Fort Greely)

• The U.S. Department of Defense's "only extreme natural cold weather test facility".²⁵⁴

Fort Wainwright²⁵⁵

- Infantry combat team
- Combat aviation brigade
- While the US Army is in the process of cutting 80,000 troops from its ranks (going from 570,000 to 490,000 within the years 2013-2019), Fort Wainwright's troop strength will increase slightly from 6,300 to 6,852, although the focus of that force is the Asia-Pacific region.²⁵⁶
- DOD Report to Congress 2011:
 - "Fort Wainwright is home to an Army Brigade Combat Team and aviation task force, and can provide services such as air support operations and emergency medical care. Together with Fort Greely, Fort Wainwright also serves as a cold weather test and training center."²⁵⁷

²⁴⁸ "Arctic air base gets \$40 million upgrade in face of increasing missile threats," CBS News, 30 May 2017, <u>http://www.cbsnews.com</u>

²⁴⁷ "Report to Congress on Arctic Operations and the Northwest Passage," Department of Defense, May 2011, <u>http://www.defense.gov</u>

²⁴⁹ Lanteigne, Mark, "Return to Keflavik?" The Arctic Journal, 31 March 2016, http://arcticjournal.com

²⁵⁰ Powers, Rod, "Fort Greely, Alaska," About.com, date not available, <u>http://usmilitary.about.com</u>

²⁵¹ Currently Fort Greely hosts 26 of 30 interceptors based there and in California. In March the US announced plans to increase the combined total of interceptors in California and Alaska to 44 from 30, as a response to DPRK declarations. Shanker, Thom; Sanger, David, E.; Fackler, Martin, "U.S. Is Bolstering Missile Defense to Deter North Korea," New York Times, 15 March 2013. <u>http://www.nytimes.com</u>

²⁵² "Report to Congress on Arctic Operations and the Northwest Passage," Department of Defense, May 2011, <u>http://www.defense.gov</u>

²⁵³ Awford, Jenny, "This World War II army base in Alaska will have to protect America against invading Russian troop AND North Korean nukes." 31 May 2017, The Sun, <u>www.thesun.co.uk</u>

²⁵⁴ Schauer, Mark, "U.S. Army Cold Regions Test Center automotive test track benefits military and civilian customers," 26 May 2016, U.S. Department of Defense, https://www.army.mil

²⁵⁵ "Fort Wainwright Alaska: Units and Support," US Army, last updated 23 February 2013, http://www.wainwright.army.mil

²⁵⁶ Friedman, Sam, "Fort Wainwright to grow as Army shrinks," Newsminer.com, 25 June 2013, <u>http://www.newsminer.com</u>

- 128 extra soldiers were assigned to the base in 2015 to follow the Gray Eagle missile-equipped combat drone unit's arrival, according to an announcement from Alaska's congressional delegation.²⁵⁸
 - First Grey Eagle took inaugural flight on 11 April 2016²⁵⁹
- "Construction of a \$47 million unmanned aerial vehicle hangar [in] Ft. Wainwright is also in the U.S. House approved appropriations bill. The hangar is for the post's new Grey Eagle intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance unit."²⁶⁰

Fort Richardson (joint base with Elmendorf AFB)²⁶¹

- Alaskan Command centre for 21,000 Alaskan military personnel
- US Army Alaska (USARAK)²⁶²
- Not specifically earmarked for Arctic operationsAccording to numbers released by the U.S. army in 2015, Joint Base Elmendorf-Richardson is to lose 2,631 soldiers, or 59 percent of its personnel due to White House budget cuts²⁶³.

Northern Warfare Training Centre²⁶⁴

- Black Rapids, Alaska
- Conducts "relevant training to the leaders of USARAK units so that they can fight and win in demanding cold weather and mountain environments"²⁶⁵
- The training centre has 15 instructors and 35 support personnel.²⁶⁶

Kotzebue (Seasonal/Forward Operating Base of the U.S. Coast Guard):

 The Coast Guard annually sets up a forward operation location here for a summer of activity, including Operation Arctic Shield.²⁶⁷

Dutch Harbor

- "Dutch Harbor, in the Aleutian Island chain, is strategically located on the North Pacific shipping lanes between North America, East Asia, and the Bering Sea. With its 40-foot deep harbor, the Unalaska Marine Center, and U.S. Coast Guard dock, Dutch Harbor provides vessel berthing, containerized cargo loading, warehousing, and passenger and port services. The seaport is primarily oriented toward supporting the fishing industry, but is icefree year round and can provide limited berthing and support for larger, deep draft vessels. However, with a runway less than 4,000 feet in length and harsh weather conditions, the Unalaska airport provides only limited multimodal port capabilities.
- The Coast Guard's "National Security Cutters" it is in the process of acquiring eight of these 418 foot armed vessels – are capable of operating in open Arctic waters and are refuelled primarily at Dutch Harbor.²⁶⁸

Adak facility closed

"Adak lies near the southern tip of the Aleutian Islands, about 450 miles west of Dutch Harbor. Although Adak was
an important operations and supply location for the U.S. military during the Cold War, it was closed in 2000 as a
result of the Base Realignment and Closure (BRAC) Act of 1995."²⁶⁹

Base at Keflavik, Iceland possibly reopening

 Within the Pentagon's 2017 budget proposal was a request for \$22 million to refurbish the installations at Keflavík in order to house American personnel as well as Boeing P-8 Poseidon aircraft.²⁷⁰

²⁶¹ US Air Force, Joint Base - <u>http://www.jber.af.mil/units/index.asp</u>

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

²⁵⁷ "Report to Congress on Arctic Operations and the Northwest Passage," Department of Defense, May 2011, <u>http://www.defense.gov</u>

²⁵⁸ Hollander, Zaz, "U.S. Army to add 9 combat drones at Fort Wainwright," Alaska Dispatch News, 5 June 2015, <u>http://www.adn.com</u>

²⁵⁹ Sgt. Brady, Sean, "First Gray Eagle Flight Expands Army Aviation Capability in Alaska," PACOM News, 20 April 2016, www.pacom.mil

²⁶⁰ Bross, Dan, "Congress passes bills of Alaska military projects," Alaska Public Media, 19 May 2016, <u>http://www.alaskapublic.org</u>

²⁶² "USARK Organizations", U.S. Army Alaska, no date listed, <u>http://www.usarak.army.mil</u>

²⁶³ "Army Announces troop cuts; Alaska not spared," Daily News-Miner, 9 July 2015, <u>http://www.newsminer.com</u>

²⁶⁴ "Northern Warfare Training Centre," U.S. Army, <u>http://www.wainwright.army.mil/nwtc/</u>

²⁶⁵ "Northern Warfare Training Centre," U.S. Army, <u>http://www.wainwright.army.mil/nwtc/</u>

²⁶⁶ Robson, Seth, "Northern Warfare Training Center tests troops' mettle in harshest conditions," Stars and Stripes, 5 March 2015, https://www.stripes.com

²⁶⁷ Restino, Carey, "Coast Guard sets up seasonal base in Kotzebue again," The Arctic Sounder, 23 June 2017, http://www.thearcticsounder.com

²⁶⁸ "United States Coast Guard Arctic Strategy," United States Coast Guard, May 2013, <u>http://www.uscg.mil/seniorleadership/DOCS/CG_Arctic_Strategy.pdf</u>

²⁶⁹ "Report to Congress on Arctic Operations and the Northwest Passage," Department of Defense, May 2011, <u>http://www.defense.gov</u>

1.1.3 Sea

Not applicable

- The United States has no naval bases in Alaska (although naval forces use other port facilities)
- The US has no deep water port in Alaska, although the need for such a port is repeatedly raised²⁷¹ and the Alaskan Department of Transport and the Army Corps of Engineers are currently engaged in a three-year Alaska Deep Draft Arctic Ports Study to evaluate potential locations for such a port.²⁷² In January 2013 a draft report from the Army Corps of Engineers identified the Nome/Port Clarence region as the best location for a deep water port.²⁷³
- In July 2013 the US Naval War College launched an "Arctic Regional Studies Group" in order "to help the Navy • prepare for future operational and strategic challenges in the Arctic." 274

Update on Alaska Deep Draft Arctic Ports Studies

- In February 2014 the study group pointed out that "no one port was likely going to be sufficient." Multiple possibilities are now under consideration and the recommendation will be delayed, with the Alaska US Army Corps of Engineers, the technical lead on the project, suggesting that a useable port is unlikely to be ready before 2030.²⁷⁵
- The US Army's 2015 Draft Feasibility Report noted that, "The additional annual cost of operation and maintenance for the Tentatively Selected Plan is estimated at \$244,000. Estimated associated costs include \$61.0 million in non-Federal costs for development of local service facilities and \$15,700 for navigation aids (a U.S. Coast Guard expense)."276

1.2 Equipment

1.2.1 Air

Aircraft Carriers

"While not specifically adapted to ice conditions, the many US aircraft carriers, other major combat ships and amphibious warfare ships are generally capable of operating in northern weather conditions."²⁷⁷

MQ-1C Gray Eagle Unmanned Aerial System²⁷⁸

- Arrived in Alaska late 2015 to "enhance the tactical capabilities of commanders in USARAK Aviation, Stryker and Airborne units, along with joint partners".
- Gray Eagle took inaugural flight in Alaskan airspace on 11 April 2016
- "The versatility of Gray Eagle gives units in Alaska the ability to train for wartime tasks with real-world combat assets. The aircraft is the newest addition to UATF's inventory, capable of operating in extreme cold regions across the globe."



Photo Credit: MQ-1C Gray Eagle, General Atomics Aeronautical, http://www.ga-asi.com/grav-eagle

²⁷⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

²⁷¹ O'Rourke, Ronald, "Coast Guard Polar Icebreaker Modernization: Background and Issues for Congress," US Congresional Research Service, 10 December 2012, http://www.fas.org/sgp/crs/weapons/RL34391.pdf 272 "Alaska Department of Transportation and Public Facilities/Statewide Design and Engineering Services: Arctic Port Study," State of Alaska, no date listed,

http://www.dot.state.ak.us/stwddes/desports/arctic.shtml

²⁷³ Lockyer, Ellen, "Study Names Nome, Port Clarence as Best Region For Deep Water Arctic Port," Alaska Public Media, 31 January 2013, http://www.alaskapublic.org

²⁷⁴ Pettersen, Trude, "US Navy to study the Arctic," The Barents Observer, 1 August 2013 http://barentsobserver.com

- ²⁷⁵ "Carvey Restino, Arctic port study delayed past March," The Arctic Sounder, 14 February 2014, http://www.thearcticsounder.com ²⁷⁶ "Alaska Deep-Draft Arctic Port System Study," U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, February 2015,
- http://www.poa.usace.army.mil/Portals/34/docs/civilworks/arcticdeepdraft/ADDMainReportwithoutappendixes.pdf
- ²⁷⁷ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012.

278 Brady, Sean, "Alaska Aviation Task Force expands Army Aviation capability," US Army, 18 April 2016, http://www.army.mil

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five - last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

S-92 SAR helicopter²⁷⁹

- Alaska's North Slope Borough (NSB) received its first S-92 SAR helicopter in September 2016.
 - "According to the U.S. Census Bureau, NSB has a total area of 94,796 square miles of which 88,695 are land and 6,101 are water, thus the need for a long-range, all-weather capable aircraft."

HC 130 Aircraft²⁸⁰

• "While the USA has over 200 long-range maritime patrol aircraft, only a few US Coast Guard HC-130 aircraft based on Kodiak Island operate over the Bering Sea and the Arctic."



Photo Credit: S-92 Helicopter, Skip Robinson, Sikorsky https://americansecuritvtodav.com

1.2.2 Land

As of May 2014, the U.S. Army's Ground Combat Vehicle programme has been terminated. Alternative options are being considered.

1.2.3 Sea

Underwater drone research²⁸¹

- "Navy scientists are using unmanned underwater autonomous robots, or drones, to examine what's called the marginal ice zone the portion of frozen ocean's packed ice that meets open water."
- Purpose of the drones is "to assess how quickly the ice is melting and understand how soon the U.S. and Russia will be competing for new strategic waterways in the region."

Submarines

- "Most of the approximately 53 US nuclear attack submarines [which do not now carry nuclear weapons since the September 1991 Bush-Gorbachev agreement ²⁸²] (but not the SSBNs [which do carry strategic range nuclear weapons]) are known to be able to operate under the Arctic ice and break through the ice from below; they regularly transit under the Arctic ice or break through the ice and surface near the North Pole."²⁸³
 - US Navy Adm. Mark Ferguson commented that, due to decommissioning and budget decisions, that figure will drop to 41 by the late 2020s.²⁸⁴
- A research note on US SSNs in Canadian Arctic Waters from 1960-1986 confirms that SSNs did traverse Canadian Arctic waters, but also indicates that these were not secret voyages but taken "with the full knowledge and support of the Canadian government"²⁸⁵
- "In 2009 the United States deployed at least three submarines to the Arctic, including for the first time one of its newest Virginia class SSN submarines—the USS *Texas*."²⁸⁶

http://www.businessinsider.com

²⁷⁹ Waitt, Tammy, "Sikorsky delivers AK's first S-92 Search and Rescue helicopter," American Security Today, 30 September 2016, https://americansecuritytoday.com

²⁸⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

²⁸¹ Osborn, Kris, "The Navy is using drones to prep for future tensions with Russia in the Arctic," Business Insider, 22 March 2017,

²⁸²"The Presidential Nuclear Initiatives (PNIs) on Tactical Nuclear Weapons at a Glance," Arms Control Association, August 2012, http://www.armscontrol.org/factsheets/pniglance

²⁸³ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 13.

²⁸⁴ Scuitto, Jim, Top Navy Official: Russian sub activity expands to Cold War level," CNN, 19 April 2016, http://www.cnn.com

²⁸⁵ Lajeunesse, Adam, "Research Note: American SSNs in Canadian Arctic Waters, 1960-1988," Laurier Centre for Military Strategic and Disarmament Studies, http://www.canadianmilitaryhistory.ca

²⁸⁶ Climate Change and Arctic Security Report

- "In April 2011 two US nuclear attack submarines participated in Ice Exercise (ICEX) 2011, operating under the Arctic ice."²⁸⁷
- Recently, in April 2016, US attack submarines Hampton and Hartford participated in Ice Exercise (ICEX) 2016. The
 US Navy determined that the primary objectives of submarine force readiness were met.²⁸⁸
- US SSBNs²⁸⁹ are assumed not to be specifically designed for Arctic deployment, according to analysts, and are not known to be deployed there, ²⁹⁰ but firm confirmation is not available.
- Starting in 2031, 12 new SSBN(X) submarines will be introduced. "Each of these nuclear-powered vessels, the
 largest submarines the Navy has ever built, will carry up to 16 Trident ballistic missiles fitted with multiple nuclear
 warheads. All in all, this new submarine fleet is expected to deploy about 1,000 nuclear warheads 70 percent of
 the U.S. government's strategic nuclear weapons."²⁹¹ It is not specified whether these submarines will be
 deployable in the Arctic.

Offshore Patrol Vessels

• "The US Coast Guard regularly deploys OPVs [offshore patrol vessels] in or near the Arctic." 292

Offshore Patrol Cutter (OPC) program²⁹³

- An acquisition project of the US Coast Guard
- OPC program replacing the 270-foot and 210-foot medium-endurance cutters that are 25 to 50 years old.
- Costs an estimated \$11 billion (most expensive in US Coast Guard history).

Legend-class National Security Cutters

- "The new Legend (also known as National Security Cutter, NSC) class large OPVs have been designed partly to be able to operate in Arctic weather conditions better than the previous Hamilton class, but they are not ice-strengthened."²⁹⁴
- As of June 2017, seven of the eight cutters have been completed.²⁹⁵
- "Of the Coast Guard's white-hull patrol cutter fleet, the NSC is the largest and most technologically sophisticated"²⁹⁶
 - "With robust Command, Control, Communication, Computers, Intelligence, Surveillance and Reconnaissance (C4ISR) equipment, stern boat launch and aviation facilities, as well as longendurance station keeping, the NSCs are afloat operational-level headquarters for complex law enforcement and national security missions"
- Manufactured by Huntington Ingalls Shipyards for a crew of 148.297

Sentinel-class Cutters

• The US Coast Guard commissioned its second cutter of this kind in June 2017. It will be harboured in Ketchikan alongside the first cutter of this kind, commissioned in April.²⁹⁸

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

²⁸⁷ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 13.²⁸⁸ "US meets primary objectives of submarine force readiness exercise in Arctic," Sputnik News, 25 March 2016, http://sputniknews.com

²⁸⁸ "US meets primary objectives of submarine force readiness exercise in Arctic," Sputnik News, 25 March 2016, http://sputniknews.com

²⁸⁹ "The U.S. fleet of ballistic missile submarines consists of 14 Trident (Ohio-class) submarines, each equipped to carry 24 Trident missiles. With two submarines in overhaul, the operational fleet of 12 submarines currently carry around 1,100 warheads," They operate from two bases, King's Bay on the Atlantic and Bangor on the Pacific. Amy F. Woolf, "U.S. Strategic Nuclear Forces: Background, Developments, and Issues," US Congressional Research Service, 14 January 2013. http://www.fas.org/sgp/crs/nuke/RL33640.pdf

²⁹⁰ Wallace, Michael, Stables, Steve, "Ridding the World of Nuclear Weapons: A Task Long Overdue," Canadian Pugwash Group and the Rideau Institute, March 2010, http://www.arcticsecurity.org/docs/arctic-nuclear-report-web.pdf

²⁹¹ Lawrence S. Winter, "Opinion: New nuclear submarine arms race poses great danger," Times of Trenton, 12 August 2014, <u>http://www.nj.com</u>

²⁹² Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 13.

²⁹³ Marcario, John C., "Coast Guard to focus on Arctic, Recapitalizing the fleet," SEAPOWER Magazine, 6 July 2016, http://www.seapowermagazine.org

²⁹⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 13.

²⁹⁵ "Acquisition Update: Coast Guard Christens Seventh National Security Cutter," United States Coast Guard, last modified 7 March 2017,

https://www.uscg.mil/hq/CG9/newsroom/updates/nsc030617.asp

²⁹⁶ "National Security Cutter," Military.com, no dated listed, <u>http://www.military.com</u>

²⁹⁷ "National Security Cutter," Military.com, no dated listed, <u>http://www.military.com</u>

²⁹⁸ "Coast Guard commissions second Alaska cutter," Daily News-Miner, 18 June 2017, http://www.newsminer.com

Icebreakers

- Addressing the limited icebreaking capability of the US Coast Guard has been an issue for a number of years, with all the US's icebreakers nearing the end of their lives. In 2012, the Congressional Research Service noted the following about its icebreaking capacity:
- "The reactivation of *Polar Star* will result in an operational U.S. polar icebreaking fleet consisting for the next 7 to 10 years of one heavy polar icebreaker (*Polar Star*) and one medium polar icebreaker (*Healy*).
- As of March 2016, the US Coast Guard is moving ahead with an acquisition strategy for a new heavy icebreaker to "mitigate a possible three- to six-year heavy icebreaker capacity gap²⁹⁹ as the agency's lone active ice breaker *Polar Star* nears the end of its service life," says the US Government Accountability Office.³⁰⁰ The icebreaker is expected to cost up to \$1 billion and the process of accepting proposals will start in 2017 with a contract award set for 2019, and building starting in 2020.³⁰¹
 - In early November 2016, a Request for Information was issued by the Coast Guard which "detailed the Coast Guard's plans to use a single shipyard to build three icebreakers over the next decade". The Coast Guard put forward an estimate that six icebreakers would satisfy the strategic needs of the U.S. in the polar regions.³⁰²According to U.S. Coast Guard Commandant Adm. Paul Zukunft in remarks before the Center for Strategic and International Studies, the Trump administration's budget request to Congress will include a first payment of \$150 million for the first of six Coast Guard icebreakers, to be delivered by 2023.³⁰³
 - 3 heavy and 3 medium³⁰⁴
 - "Analysts said the Coast Guard will likely receive approval from the Pentagon to arm these
 new icebreakers with medium caliber naval guns and probably even anti-ship missiles and
 cruise missiles."³⁰⁵
 - Congress had previously declined funding for the project.³⁰⁶
- As of June 2017, the U.S. Coast Guard has expressed interest in the Aiviq, the Edison Chouest anchor handling supply tug, as "an interim icebreaker while the Coast Guard builds new polar ships".³⁰⁷

Polar Star



Photo Credit: Polar Star, United States Coast Guard http://gcaptain.com/ship-photos-u-s-icebreaker-polar-star-reaches-mcmurdo-station-antarctica/

- Commissioned in 1976⁵⁰⁸, deactivated in 2010, and back in operation by 2013 to resume its mission.³⁰⁹
- 399 feet long, with a crew of 134, it can break 6 feet of ice at 3 knots, and can break 21 feet of ice by backing and ramming.³¹⁰
- Set to retire no later than 2022³¹¹
- Mission is break ice and maintain waterways
- Home-ported in Seattle

- ³⁰⁰ Nicholas, Scott, "GAO: Coast Guard to address Arctic regional operation capacity gaps," ExecutiveGov, 14 July 2016, http://www.executivegov.com
- ³⁰¹ Pugliese, David, "U.S. Coast Guard Moves Ahead on New Icebreaker," Ottawa Citizen, 29 January 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com
- Martinson, Erica, "Coast Guard advances plans to build 3 icebreakers," The Arctic Sounder, 5 November 2016, http://www.thearcticsounder.com
- ³⁰³ Grady, John, Coast Guard Commandant continues to call for more U.S. icebreakers," USNI News, 3 May 2017, https://news.usni.org/
- ³⁰⁴ Villasanta, Arthur D., "US, Russia Arming their Icebreakers as War in the Arctic Looms," China Topix, 19 May 2017, http://www.chinatopix.com
 ³⁰⁵ Villasanta, Arthur D., "US, Russia Arming their Icebreakers as War in the Arctic Looms," China Topix, 19 May 2017, http://www.chinatopix.com

- ³⁰⁷ Moore, Kirk, "Coast Guard may observe Aiviq icebreaker trials," Workboat, 8 June 2017, <u>www.workboat.com</u>
- ³⁰⁸ Ortega-Welch, Marissa, and Miller, Craig, "Life Aboard a Polar Roller," 6 November 2014, KQED Science, https://ww2.kqed.org

³¹¹ Starr, Terrell Jermaine, "The Naval Crisis in the Arctic that America Refuses to Fix," Foxtrot Alpha, 16 February 2017, foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

²⁹⁹ According to a June 2016 GOA report, projections show that the US Coast Guard will likely face a 3- to 6-year gap in its heavy icebreaker capability before a new one is ready.

³⁰⁶ Todaro, Chelsea, Congress Declines to Help Coast Guard Fund New Polar Icebreaker," Military News – National Defense, 17 September 2014, http://www.military.com/

³⁰⁹ "History," United States Coast Guard, last modified 21 December 2016, https://www.uscg.mil

³¹⁰ Starr, Terrell Jermaine, "The Naval Crisis in the Arctic that America Refuses to Fix," Foxtrot Alpha, 16 February 2017, foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

- Available for service in Antarctic as well as Arctic, one report suggests that it will spend most of its time in Antarctica clearing waterways to resupply the McMurdo Research Station in a yearly mission, Operation Deep Freeze.³¹²
- Likely to be used as scientific platform as well.³¹³

Healy



Photo Credit: Healy, United States Coast Guard http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:USCGC Healy (WAGB-20) north of Alaska.jpg

- A 420 foot vessel capable of breaking 4.5 feet of ice at three knots, and eight feet by backing a ramming.³¹⁴
- "The Coast Guard's third polar icebreaker—*Healy*—entered service in 2000. Compared to *Polar Star* and *Polar Sea*, *Healy* has less icebreaking capability (it is considered a medium polar icebreaker), but more capability for supporting scientific research. The ship is used primarily for supporting scientific research in the Arctic.³¹⁵

1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)

US Coast Guard

- In May 2013 the Coast Guard released a new "Arctic Strategy"³¹⁶ report:
 - Perhaps one of the more striking features of the report is that it does not call for major or near-term moves towards building up an Arctic infrastructure. Rather than building up a year-round infrastructure, the focus will continue to be on seasonal deployments.³¹⁷ The report³¹⁸ identifies improvements in domain awareness as a key priority: "Coast Guard operations require precise and ongoing awareness of activities in the maritime domain. Maritime awareness in the Arctic is currently restricted due to limited surveillance, monitoring, and information system capabilities. Persistent awareness enables identification of threats, information-sharing with front-line partners, and improved risk management."
- In discussing its Arctic "presence," the Coast Guard identifies "strategic priorities to achieve effective presence," including:
 - The development of "an adaptable mix of cutters, boats, aircraft (including unmanned aerial systems), and shore infrastructure to enable effective seasonal operations";
 - "Expanding capacity to respond to emergency and other time critical events";
 - "Maintain a scalable presence commensurate with risks posed by increasing activity";
 - "Develop the appropriate capabilities and competencies, with sufficient capacity, to execute missions at an acceptable level of risk, and in a manner that is adaptive to changes in environmental conditions"; and
 - "Proceed with a risk-based, phased approach to resourcing to address the highest operational needs, including the establishment of infrastructure and communications systems to support operations".
 - The report also includes a useful appendix on "U.S. Coast Guard Forces and Assets" (elements, such as Dutch Harbor and Adak Facility).

- ³¹³ Restino, Carey, "Coast Guard: Refurbished icebreaker heads north," AlaskaDispatch, 6 July 2013, <u>http://www.alaskadispatch.com</u>
- ³¹⁴ Restino, Carey, "Coast Guard: Refurbished icebreaker heads north," AlaskaDispatch, 6 July 2013, <u>http://www.alaskadispatch.com</u>

³¹² Carlsen, Audrey, "Polar Star Headed for Arctic Ice Trials," Unalaska Community Broadcasting, 23 June 2013, <u>http://kucb.org</u>

³¹⁵ O'Rourke, Ronald, "Coast Guard Polar Icebreaker Modernization: Background and Issues for Congress," US Congresional Research Service, 10 December 2012, <u>http://www.fas.org/sgp/crs/weapons/RL34391.pdf</u>

³¹⁶ "United States Coast Guard Arctic Strategy," U.S. Coast Guard, May 2013, http://www.uscg.mil/seniorleadership/DOCS/CG_Arctic_Strategy.pdf

³¹⁷ McDermott, Jennifer, "Arctic to remain part-time pursuit of Coast Guard," The Day, 21 May 2013, http://theday.com

³¹⁸ "United States Coast Guard Arctic Strategy," U.S. Coast Guard, May 2013, <u>http://www.uscg.mil/seniorleadership/DOCS/CG_Arctic_Strategy.pdf</u>

- June 2014 Admiral Tom Ostebo is joining Coast Guard District 17 as a new commander, bringing with him Arctic experience. "During Ostebo's tenure, the Coast Guard launched seasonal operations in the Arctic, where shipping traffic is on the rise. When a winter storm prevented a fuel delivery to Nome in 2012, he sent the icebreaker Healy to clear a path for a Russian tanker. He also supervised the Coast Guard's response to the grounding of the Shell drill rig Kulluk near Kodiak in early 2013." Ostebo says that there is still a lot of work that needs to be done in the Arctic.³¹⁹
- August 2014 The U.S. Coast Guard Research and Development Centre "is leading a multiagency team to support Arctic Shield 2014, a 17th Coast Guard District initiative. The purpose of their month-long evaluation is to improve USCG capabilities in the Arctic region, specifically in the areas of boat operations, communications, navigational safety and oil spill response."³²⁰
- April 2016 In April, the U.S. Coast Guard participated in The Northwest Passage Tabletop Exercise, a mass joint tabletop exercise to "test and evaluate interagency cooperation and focus on the response to a cruise ship experiencing progressive flooding in a remote Arctic region in the vicinity of the U.S./Canadian border."³²¹
- June 2016 Coast Guard has leased a facility in coastal town of Kotzebue, Alaska, to house two MH-60 Jayhawk helicopters for the next 5 years. Will also be seasonal home base for Operation Arctic Shield.³²² USCG will lease from May 1st to September 30th each year.³²³
- Increase in Coast Guard's need for large-scale rescue exercises³²⁴
 - As a result of increased cruise-based tourism like the Crystal Serenity cruising the Northwest Passage in August 2016, the U.S. Coast Guard has had to increase its level of response-preparedness for mass emergencies along that route.
 - A successful rescue exercise in Northern Alaska was completed in early August as the Crystal Serenity was preparing to leave port.
- May 2017 "A draft proposal of the [2018] budget obtained in March called for the Coast Guard to be cut 14
 percent to \$7.8 billion to help pay for Trump's proposed southern border wall, but the idea was later scrapped in
 favor of level funding of about \$9.1 billion."³²⁵

National Guard Arctic Interest Council

• A preliminary charter was signed in February 2017 in Utqiagvik (Barrow). "The goal is to coordinate and, at times, combine Arctic operations, share expertise and, if needed, stage joint responses with personnel trained and equipped for Arctic conditions."³²⁶

Arctic Executive Steering Committee³²⁷

- In 2015, Obama issued an executive order aimed at coordinating federal action on the Arctic, called the Arctic Executive Steering Committee (AESC).
- "The AESC convenes at the Deputy Secretary level to guide the development of department and agency plans to assure that Federal activity is well-coordinated and better communicated to partners such as the State of Alaska, Alaska Native communities, the U.S. Congress, the business community, international partners, and other stakeholders."³²⁸

³¹⁹ Kelly, Casey, "New Coast Guard District 17commander brings Arctic Experience," KTOO, 14 June 2014, <u>http://www.ktoo.org</u>

³²⁰ Haun, Eric, "Coast Guard Preps for Arctic Research," MarineLink, 1 August 2014, <u>http://www.marinelink.com</u>

³²¹ "Coast Guard, partners, industry conduct mass rescue tabletop exercise in Anchorage, Alaska," US Coast Guard Newsroom, 22 April 2016, http://www.uscgnews.com

³²² Andrews, Laurel, "Coast Guard launches seasonal home base in Kotzebue," 26 June 2016, Alaska News, http://www.adn.com

³²³ "USCG takes control of Kotzebue aviation facility," 24 June 2016, KTUU, <u>http://www.ktuu.com</u>

³²⁴ Bergman, Julia, "Mass Rescue Exercise Tests Response Capabilities in Arctic," Military.com, 25 August 2016, <u>www.military.com</u>

³²⁵ Lamothe, Dan, "Trump pledges to build icebreakers but doesn't say how he'll pay for them," Alaska Dispatch News, 18 May 2017, https://www.adn.com ³²⁶ Rosen, Yareth, Increased activity in warming Arctic piques interest of Lower 48 National Guard leaders,"Alaska Dispatch News, 6 February 2017, www.adn.com

³²⁷ Ruskin, Liz, "Obama Issues Executive Order on Arctic Co-ordination," Alaska Public Media, 21 January 2015, <u>www.alaskapublic.org</u>

³²⁸ "The Arctic as a national imperitive," Brown University, 31 May 2016, https://www.brown.edu

As of May 2017, the AESC remains operation under the Trump administration.³²⁹

Coast Guard Arctic Craft Project

- Part of the Coast Guard's Arctic Strategy is to ensure that it is ready to respond. Part of the project includes broadening "the Coast Guard's understanding of Arctic waters and how best to prepare for the challenges the region presents." Part of the project is to evaluate each piece of equipment the Coast Guard uses, deciding what equipment is most often used and whether the equipment is up to par with leading technologies.³³⁰
 - No updates since 2014.

U.S. Navy Arctic Roadmap³³¹

- In 2009 the US Navy established a Task Force on Climate Change (TFCC) in order to develop Navy roadmaps, first for the Arctic and later for more general responses to global climate change. The October 2009 Arctic Roadmap was for the period FY2010-FY2014. Rather than setting out Arctic plans and policies, it set out a schedule for the development and implementation of such plans and policies. As such it called for things like the development strategic objectives and command structure requirements, and assessments of current Navy Arctic capabilities.³³²
- U.S. Navy Arctic Roadmap for 2014 2030: "Over the last four years, Task Force Climate Change, in consultation
 and collaborating with the broader governmental and private scientific communities, has concluded that ice
 conditions in the Arctic Ocean are changing more rapidly than first anticipated. This updated U.S. Navy Arctic
 Roadmap prepares the U.S. Navy to respond effectively to future contingencies, delineates in the U.S. Navy's
 Arctic Region leadership role with the Defense Department, and articulates the Navy's support to national
 priorities."³³³

Deployment of 330 US Marines in Norway³³⁴

- The Norwegian government announced in October 2016 the US initiative to station 330 US Marines on rotation around 1,000 kilometres (600 miles) from the Russian border starting in January 2017.
- According to the Norwegian Defence Ministry, "they will be engaged in training and manoeuvres in almost Arctic conditions."
- As of January, the six month deployment of marines began.³³⁵

2. Recurring Operations and Exercises

Alaska Shield

 A series of exercises for developing responses of catastrophic events (e.g. earthquake) in Alaska, involving military and civilian agencies.³³⁶

Arctic Eagle³³⁷

- Annual exercise led by the Alaska Nationa Guard
- Arctic Eagle 2017: "The Alaska National Guard participated in Arctic Eagle 2017, a command post and tabletop exercise, Feb. 22 26." Key decision makers practiced the logistics of responding to a state emergency, rehearsed dual status command operations, and assessed the effectiveness of their ability to respond in Arctic conditions.

³²⁹ Rosen, Yereth, "With Trump administration intentions unclear, Alaskans might have to fill the void on Arctic policy," Alaska Dispatch News, 22 May 2017, <u>www.adn.com</u>

³³⁰ Petty Officer 1st Class Eggert, Shawn, "Coast Guard Arctic Craft Project looks to older technologies to tackle new challenges in Arctic," DVIDS, 19 August 2014, http://www.dvidshub.net

³³¹ "U.S. Navy Arctic Roadmap 2014-2030," U.S. Navy, February 2014, <u>www.navy.mil</u>

³³² O'Rourke, Ronald, "Coast Guard Polar Icebreaker Modernization: Background and Issues for Congress," US Congresional Research Service, 10 December 2012, p. 63-65, <u>http://www.fas.org/sgp/crs/weapons/RL34391.pdf</u>

³³³ "U.S. Navy Arctic Roadmap 2014-2030," U.S. Navy, February 2014, <u>www.navy.mil</u>

³³⁴ L'Agence France Presse, "US to deploy 330 troops in Norway," Yahoo, 24 October 2016, <u>www.yahoo.com</u>

³³⁵ "Norway welcomes 300 US Marines for first time since the Second World War," The Independent, 17 January 2017, http://www.independent.co.uk ³³⁶ Alaska Shield 2012 focused on winter storm response:

http://ready.alaska.gov/press/Statewide%20Exercise%20Prepares%20Alaska%20for%20Big%20Winter%20Storm.pdf

³³⁷ Lt. Col. Olmstead, Candis, "Alaska National Guard trains to respond to state emergencies," Alaska National Guard Public Affairs, 7 March 2017, https://www.dvidshub.net

 "This year's exercise was in preparation for Arctic Eagle 2018, a major emergency response exercise that will occur next year, which will test the capabilities and effectiveness of a multi-national, multiagency response to a major incident in the state."

Arctic Edge

 U.S. Northern Command conducts this exercise in cooperation with the State of Alaska Division of Homeland Security and Emergency Management and other federal, state and local agencies. It provides training in interagency disaster response and DOD responses to requests for assistance from U.S. civil authorities.³³⁸

Operation Arctic Pegasus³³⁹

- US Army Alaska's annual joint exercise
- Testing rapid-deployment readiness in Arctic conditions
- Arctic Pegasus last took place in November 2015, when Stryker vehicles were deployed for the first time above the Arctic Circle

Operation Arctic Shield³⁴⁰

- An operation of the US Coast Guard which began in 2012 and occurs annually to increase the agency's Arctic awareness and preparedness.
- As of July 2016, its seasonal home will be established in Kotzebue, Alaska.
 - "In prior Arctic Shield Operations years, the Coast Guard had skipped from town to town each summer — from Kotzebue to Barrow to Prudhoe Bay. A permanent forward operation location will allow for more flexibility, [Coast Guard Chief Petty Officer Shawn] Eggert said."
- Arctic Shield 2017 launched 1 July 2017.

Operation Deep Freeze

- The U.S. military's annual logistical support of the National Science Foundation's U.S. Antarctic Program
- The mission includes breaking through Antarctic ice to resupply McMurdo Station, a large US Antarctic research station.
- Operation Deep Freeze 2016 used Coast Guard Cutter Polar Star to create a 13-mile channel allowing two supply vessels to reach McMurdo Station.

Ice Exercise (ICEX)

- Biennial exercise coordinated by ASL and aimed at assessing operational capacity of the submarine force in the Arctic while advancing scientific research
- Reflects the USA's national security and homeland defense interests in the region
- A five-week exercise with over 200 participants from four nations.
- ICEX 2016³⁴¹
 - ICEX 2016 occurred in the Arctic Ocean in March following construction of the temporary US Navy Ice Camp, SARGO.

NOAA and U.S. Coast Guard: Simulation Based Research Exercise

• The National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) and the U.S. Coast Guard (USCG) are carrying out a simulation-based research exercise. The aim is to strengthen security and environmental protection in the Arctic. "USCG researchers aboard the Healy cutter are set to simulate an oil spill and test unmanned airborne and underwater sensing technologies..."³⁴²

Northern Edge

• The biennial exercise is a training event involving US Air Force, Navy, Army and National Guard.³⁴³

³⁴² Clemens, Jay, "NOAA, Coast Guard test systems for Arctic Response Missions," ExecutiveGov, 15 Aug. 2014, <u>http://www.executivegov.com</u>
 ³⁴³ Northern Edge 2011 - <u>http://www.iber.af.mil/alcom/northernedge/northernedge2011.asp</u>

³³⁸ Arctic Edge - <u>http://www.jber.af.mil/alcom/arcticedge/</u>

³³⁹ Friedman, Sam, "Fort Wainwright's Strykers strike out for the Arctic," News Miner, 5 November 2015, <u>http://www.newsminer.com</u>

³⁴⁰ Andrews, Laurel, "Coast Guard launches seasonal home base in Kotzebue," 26 June 2016, Alaska News, http://www.adn.com

³⁴¹ "US Navy Begins Ice Exercise (ICEX) 2016 in Arctic Ocean," Naval-technology.com, 3 March 2016, http://www.naval-technology.com

- "It is Alaska's premier joint training exercise designed to practice operations, techniques and procedures, and enhance interoperability among the services. Over 6,000 participants from all the services, Airman, Soldiers, Sailors, Marines and Coast Guardsmen from active duty, reserve and national guard units are involved [in the 2011 exercise]."³⁴⁴
- Northern Edge, which normally runs every two years, was cancelled in 2013 and ran for the first time since 2011 from June 15-26 2015.³⁴⁵
- Exercise Northern Edge 2017 took place May 1-12 at Joint Base Elmendorf-Richardson in Anchorage, Alaska.³⁴⁶
 - Lingering concern from coastal communities in Alaska about the environmental impacts of Northern Edge 2015 made plans for 2017 controversial.³⁴⁷

Exercise Red Flag – Alaska (RFA)³⁴⁸

- "A multi-service, multi-national, air combat training exercise sponsored by the Pacific Air Forces of the US Air Force"
- Began in 1976 in the Philippines as "Cope Thunder", and moved to Eielson Air Force Base (AFB) in Alaska in 1992. Renamed "Red Flag Alaska" in 2006.
- While "the main objective of the exercise has been to improve the ability of aircrew to handle high-stress combat situations", the aim has expanded to "overwhelm the senses with combat simulations", according to Lt Col Reggie Smith of the 353rd Combat Training Squadron (CTS).
- The 2016 series of field training exercises concluded on 19 August, 2016.³⁴⁹

Exercise Spartan Pegasus

- A joint Army-Air Force rapid-deployment exercise occurring near Deadhorse, Alaska, that includes paratroopers from Joint Base Elemendorf-Richardson (JBER) and Stryker Brigade soldiers, as well as equipment from Fort Wainwright.³⁵⁰
- "Intended to demonstrate the ability of paratroopers and Strykers to deploy quickly to and operate in the Arctic." ³⁵¹
- Most recent exercise wrapped up in February 2017. ³⁵²
 - Spartan Pegasus 15 was the largest U.S. airborne mission north of the Arctic Circle in more than a decade.³⁵³

³⁴⁷ "Alaska senator says Navy has explaining to do," RCInet, 21 September 2016, <u>www.rcinet.ca</u>

³⁴⁴ Northern Edge 2011 - <u>http://www.jber.af.mil/alcom/northernedge/northernedge2011.asp</u>

³⁴⁵ "Northern Edge joint military training exercise," Alaska Dispatch News, 23 June 2015, http://www.adn.com

³⁴⁶ Klouda, Naomi, "Northern Edge exercise takes to Alaska skies, seas," Alaska Journal of Commerce, 3 May 2017, <u>http://www.alaskajournal.com</u>

³⁴⁸ Fence Check, <u>http://www.fencecheck.com</u>

³⁴⁹ "Red Flag Alaska: Eielson Airforce Base," United States Air Force, no date listed, <u>http://www.eielson.af.mil</u>

³⁵⁰ Ellis, Tim, "Exercise near Deadhorse to test paratroopers' ability to operate in cold," Alaska Public, <u>http://www.alaskapublic.org</u>

³⁵¹ Ellis, Tim, "Exercise near Deadhorse to test paratroopers' ability to operate in cold," Alaska Public, <u>http://www.alaskapublic.org</u>

³⁵² Ellis, Tim, "Exercise near Deadhorse to test paratroopers' ability to operate in cold," Alaska Public, <u>http://www.alaskapublic.org</u>

³⁵³ Smith, Jeffrey, "Exercise Spartan Pegasus demonstrates joint military partnership," 26 February 2015, <u>https://www.army.mil</u>

RUSSIA

1. Security Assets available for Operations in the North

1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)

As of January 2017, it is reported that Russia has "6 military bases, 16 deepwater ports, and 13 airbases".³⁵⁴

Northern Fleet Naval Bases

Severomorsk (Northern Fleet Headquarters)

- "As of 1996 the fleet provided home ports for thirty-seven nuclear submarines, twenty-two other submarines, forty-seven principal surface combatants, and ten coastal and smaller ships. The naval aviation contingent included a complement of twenty Su-39 fixed-wing aircraft and ten antisubmarine warfare helicopters on board the Admiral Kuznetsov, which heads the air defense of the Barents Sea. Shore-based naval aviation included 200 combat aircraft and sixty-four helicopters. The Northern Fleet has two naval infantry brigades, one coastal defense regiment, and an air defense missile regiment."³⁵⁵
- The largest of Russia's five naval fleets is the Northern Fleet, stationed on the Kola Peninsula and along the coasts • of the Barents and White Seas
- Russia Joint Strategic Command North (JSCN), created in 2014 as overarching command structure for the • developing arctic force, has headquarters at Severomorsk.³⁵⁶

Bases on the Kola Peninsula^{357 358}

Gremikha – Naval Base

- Olenva Airfield & Search and Rescue Base
- Severomorsk Northern Fleet Headquarters
- Vidyayevo Naval Base
- Zapadnava Litsa Naval Base
- Gadzhiyevo Naval Base
- Pechenga Infantry Base
- Kandalaksha Naval Base

Wrangle Island – Electronic Warfare & Radar, Pacific Fleet Naval Base, Airfield & Search and Rescue Base³⁵⁹

- In the midst of significant build-up. 68 new bases to be built on Wrangle Island and Cape Schmidt by end of 2017.360
- Sopka-2 radar complex:

"A new radar array complex Sopka-2 entered service on Wrangel Island in 2016. The main mission of the radar is acquiring, generalizing and analyzing of aerial situation in the Arctic region," said Russian's Eastern Military District's spokesman Alexander Gordeev.³⁶¹

Cape Schmidt – Naval Base, Airfield & Search and Rescue Base³⁶²

Located in Cape Schmidt in the eastern Chukotka region³⁶³

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five - last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

^{354 354} Starr, Terrell Jermaine, "Russia's Icebreakers Make it King of the Arctic and America is Just a Pauper," Foxtrot Alpha, 26 January 2017, http://foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

[&]quot;Northern Fleet", GlobalSecurity.Org, last modified 21 September 2014, http://www.globalsecurity.org/military/world/russia/mf-north.htm

³⁵⁶ Poulin, Andrew, "5 ways Russia is positioning to dominate the Arctic," International Policy Digest, 24 January 2016, http://intpolicydigest.org

³⁵⁷ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/ what-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-u unip-on-military rught network and part of the Cold War have been reopened.

³⁵⁹ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Staalesen, Atle, "New Arctic military base is declared ready for operation," The Barents Observer, 14 December 2016, https://thebarentsobserver.com ³⁶¹ "Russia deploys Arctic radar array on Wrangel Island," RT News, 5 January 2017, www.rt.com

³⁶² Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

- The autonomous base is shaped like a five-point star and built in environmentally protected territories³⁶⁴
- According to Lt. Col. Sergei Surovikin, plans for construction of a drone detachment and an airport on the cape were to be completed by 2015³⁶⁵
- According to a press release issued in December of 2014 by Russia's Federal Ministry of Special Construction, the facility was to include the following: a "sauna, psychological evaluation room and sports facilities, as well as eating, sleeping and medical quarters." ³⁶⁶
- In November of 2015, it was announced by Russian company Rusaliance Stroy that the federal Agency for Special Construction had halted funding, and therefore construction, of the Cape Schmidt base upgrade.³⁶⁷
- As of 2017, a number of news articles indicate that construction has continued and Cape Schmidt is in the midst of significant build-up.
 - In fact, 68 new bases are to be built on Wrangle Island and Cape Schmidt by end of 2017.³⁶⁸
 - The Barents Observer noted in June 2017 that, "Seventeen new buildings, power generation stations and a fresh water well are under construction in Cape Schmidt."³⁶⁹

Franz Joseph Land 2016 – "Arctic Trefoil" – Airfield & Search and Rescue Base x2, Electronic Warfare & Radar, Naval Base³⁷⁰

- Located at 80 degrees north on Alexandra Land Island in Nagurskoye³⁷¹
- Known as the "Arctic Trefoil" complex and is the second base completed so far in the Putin-era³⁷².
- The complex is the largest building in the high Arctic and the largest human made structure so far north³⁷³
- With 14,000 square metres it is capable of providing living and working conditions for 150 servicemen to live for one-and-a-half years without outside support.³⁷⁴
- The completed base was unveiled in mid-April 2017. ³⁷⁵
- "According to new Northern Fleet Commander Nikolay Yevmenov, the new base will house a fleet of either MiG-31 or Su-34 fighter aircrafts, as well as refuelling tankers II-78."³⁷⁶
- Building of an airfield to receive aircraft has entered an active phase and will be completed in 2017 according to the Russian Defense Ministry's Information and Mass Communication Department³⁷⁷. The project includes a landing strip and airfield service facilities.³⁷⁸

Kuril Islands – Naval Base³⁷⁹

Barneo (temporary ice base)

- Annual temporary base for scientific research, Arctic expeditions and tourism
- Set up each spring "89° N 100 kilometers from the North Pole" and is usually operation for one month³⁸⁰
- For the first time in modern Russian history, paratroopers landed on a drifting floe in the Arctic Ocean, Barneo.

- ³⁷¹ Thomas Nilsen, "Russia erects huge military trefoil on Franz Joseph Land," The Barents Observer, 20 October 2015, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com
- ³⁷² Thomas Nilsen, "Russia erects huge military trefoil on Franz Joseph Land," The Barents Observer, 20 October 2015, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com
- ³⁷³ Thomas Nilsen, "Russia erects huge military trefoil on Franz Joseph Land," The Barents Observer, 20 October 2015, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com
- ³⁷⁴ "Take a glimpse inside Russia's high-tech Arctic army base," Press TV, 19 April 2016, http://presstv.ir
 ³⁷⁵ Collins, Danny, "The new Cold War," The Sun, 18 April 2017, <u>https://www.thesun.co.uk</u>
- ³⁷⁶ Staalesen, Atle, "Fighter jets for Russia's new Arctic base," The Barents Observer, 22 April 2016, http://thebarentsobserver.com
- ³⁷⁷ Nagurskoye Airfield to be completed in Alexandra Land in 2017, "The Arctic, 25 January 2017, http://arctic.ru
- ³⁷⁸ "Spetsstroy starts construction of airfield on Franz Josef Land," The Arctic, 26 October 2016, www.arctic.ru
- ³⁷⁹ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, <u>https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/heres-</u> what-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/
- ³⁸⁰ Pettersen, Trude, "Russian paratroopers conquer North Pole," The Barents Observer, 10 April 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

³⁶³ Bodner, Matthew, Eremenko, Alexey, "Russia Starts Building Military Bases in the Arctic," The Moscow Times, 8 September 2014, http://www.themoscowtimes.com/

³⁶⁴ Bodner, Matthew, Eremenko, Alexey, "Russia Starts Building Military Bases in the Arctic," The Moscow Times, 8 September 2014, http://www.themoscowtimes.com/

³⁶⁵ "Russian Military Opens 2nd Arctic Base," The Moscow Times, 27 November 2014, <u>http://www.themoscowtimes.com/</u>

³⁶⁶ "Russia Builds New Arctic Military Base," The Moscow Times, 8 December 2014, <u>http://www.themoscowtimes.com/</u>

³⁶⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "Arctic army base construction put on hold," The Barents Observer, 6 November 2015, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com

³⁶⁸ Staalesen, Atle, "New Arctic military base is declared ready for operation," The Barents Observer, 14 December 2016, https://thebarentsobserver.com

³⁶⁹ Staalesen, Atle, "Navy reports progress on building of east Arctic base," The Barents Observer, 8 June 2017, <u>https://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

³⁷⁰ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, <u>https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/heres-what-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/</u>

In early April 2014, "more than 90 paratroopers from the Ivanovo-based 98th Airborne Division jumped from an Ilyushin Il-76 to the drifting research station Barneo close to the North Pole. On Barneo the soldiers have set up a camp and will be conducting drills on operations in extreme climatic conditions. The ground temperature on Bareno is around 30 degrees below zero. Load-carrying platforms with materials, supplies, fuel and lubricants were also dropped on the polar base. The plane took off from the Olenya military airfield in Olenegorsk on the Kola Peninsula, where the paratroopers had been training for transfer to the Arctic. The drop on Barneo comes only three week after Russia dropped 350 paratroopers from the 98th Airborne Division over the far northern New Siberian Islands."³⁸¹

Novaya Zemlya (Rogachevo Air Base) – Airfield & Search and Rescue, Air Defense³⁸²

Anderma 2020³⁸³ - Airfield & Search and Rescue³⁸⁴

- New military unit to be stationed in Anderma near the Kara Sea by 2020, said Russian Deputy Defense Minister Army General Dmitry Bulgakov in February 2016
- Kotelny Island- Airfield & Search and Rescue³⁸⁵A federal nature reserve that is now hosting a new military base with an airfield able to accommodate Ilyushin II-76 aircraft all year long³⁸⁶
- Called the "Northern Shamrock", it is Russia's northernmost and largest Arctic military base. ³⁸⁷A September 2016 military rehearsal took place at new military complex on Kotelny Island. ³⁸⁸
 - The Rubezh missile complex fired two Termit cruise missiles, firing was made from Pantsir-S1, and destroyer Vice Admiral Kulakov launched its short-range surface-to-air missile system Kinzhal and its artillery complexes AK-100 and AK-630.
- Base became ready for use in 2016³⁸⁹

Alakurtti Village – Electronic Warfare & Radar³⁹⁰

"The 80th Independent Motorized Infantry Brigade was established in Alakurtti in 2015, near the Finnish border. In addition, two electronic warfare units, the 331st and 332nd Radio-Technical Regiments, have also been placed in Alakurtti."391

Severnaya Zemlya – Airfield & Search and Rescue³⁹²

March 2014: The Ministry of Defence of the Russian Federation has commissioned the setting up of "another Arctic Sea Defence Base" on the islands of the Severnaya Zemlya archipelago. 393

Sabetta (FSB Arctic Complex) – Airfield & Search and Rescue³⁹⁴

The new complex includes "a housing block for several tens of specialists, garages for special equipment, as well as a separate building for accessories". 395

^{381 381} Pettersen, Trude, "Russian paratroopers conquer North Pole," The Barents Observer, 10 April 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

³⁸² Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

[&]quot;Military Unit to Be Deployed in Russia's Kara Sea in Arctic by 2020," Sputnik News, 26 February, 2016, http://sputniknews.com

³⁸⁴ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

[&]quot;Russian Military Opens 2nd Arctic Base," The Moscow Times, 27 November 2014, http://www.themoscowtimes.com/

³⁸⁷ Haun, Eric, "Russia Ramping Up Artctic Push," Marine Link, 30 January 2017, http://www.marinelink.com/

³⁸⁸ Staaleson, Atle, "Shooting cruise missiles from Arctic archipelagio," The Barents Observer, 20 September 2016, http://barentsobserver.com

³⁸⁹ Staalesen, Atle, "New Arctic military base is declared ready for operation," The Barents Observer, 14 December 2016, https://thebarentsobserver.com

³⁹⁰ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/ ³⁹¹ Korpela, Aleksi, "Of fire and ice: Russia's militarization of the Arctic," The Nato Association of Canada, 4 February 2016, http://natoassociation.ca

³⁹² Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

³⁹³ "Russia Setting Up Another Arctic Sea Defence Base," MarineLink, 2014, http://www.marinelink.com

³⁹⁴ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/ ³⁹⁵ Staalesen, Atle, ""FSB opens new military complex," The Barents Observer, 9 August 2016, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

- The new border guard office is meant to bolster security along Russia's Arctic frontiers, according to regional leaders of the FSB in a press release. 396
- Built by Yamal LNG company along with regional authorities³⁹⁷

Naryan-Mar – Airfield & Search and Rescue³⁹⁸

Vorkuta – Airfield & Search and Rescue³⁹⁹

Nadym – Airfield & Search and Rescue⁴⁰⁰

Yamal-Nenets – Infantry Base⁴⁰¹

Alykel – Airfield & Search and Rescue⁴⁰²

Tiksi – Airfield & Search and Rescue, Air Defense⁴⁰³

Pevek – Airfield & Search and Rescue⁴⁰⁴

Provideniya – Airfield & Search and Rescue⁴⁰⁵

Anadyr-Ugolny – Airfield & Search and Rescue, Electronic Warfare & 406

Reactivation of Cold War Bases

Russia is "reactivating Cold War bases and deploying some 6,000 military personnel along the length of the arctic frontier."407 The US Naval Institute reports that Russia is planning a series of "dual use" naval facilities across the entire Arctic coast that will be available to commercial craft, the border service, and the navy's Northern Fleet. From West to East, the possible sites are: Murmansk, Archangelsk, Naryan-Mar, Vorkuta, Nadym, Dudink, Tiksi, Pevek, Provideniya, Anadyr. These may be co-located with a string of "emergency rescue centres" which had earlier been announced. 408

Research Station in development⁴⁰⁹

Russian Armed Forces have plans to develop an Arctic research station with branches in Arkhangelsk, Priozersk, and St. Petersburg.

³⁹⁷ Staalesen, Atle, ""FSB opens new military complex," The Barents Observer, 9 August 2016, http://barentsobserver.com

http://foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

³⁹⁶ Staalesen, Atle, ""FSB opens new military complex," The Barents Observer, 9 August 2016, http://barentsobserver.com

³⁹⁸ Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/ 403 Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/heres-

what-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/hereswhat-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/ 405 Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/heres-

what-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/ 406 Gramer, Robbie, "Here's What Russia's Military Build-Up in the Arctic Looks Like," The Cable, 25 January 2017, https://foreignpolicy.com/2017/01/25/heres-

what-russias-military-build-up-in-the-arctic-looks-like-trump-oil-military-high-north-infographic-map/

Rogoway, Tyler, "Russia Annexes and Deploys Forces to Tiny but Strategic Arctic Island," Foxtrot Alpha blog, 26 October 2014,

⁴⁰⁸ Adomanis, Mark, "Russia Plans Massive Arctic Expansion," USNI, 9 August 2012, http://news.usni.org

⁴⁰⁹ Brown, Daniel, "Russia is planning to build an Arctic military research centre to further its polar buildup," Business Insider, 27 May 2017, http://www.businessinsider.com

Counterterrorism Headquarters in Murmansk⁴¹⁰

• "In December 2015, plans were announced to found a counterterrorism headquarters in Murmansk."

Forward Military Infrastructure⁴¹¹

- According to Russian Northern Fleet command spokesman Andrey Korablev, "We [the Russian Northern Fleet] plan to create a military infrastructure on virtually all of the archipelagos and islands of the Arctic Ocean in order to create a unified system of monitoring above-water and underwater environments."
- Putin said, "Moscow must safeguard every part of Russian Arctic shelf." Further, Putin urged the strengthening of
 military infrastructure, saying "we should strengthen the military infrastructure. Specifically, I'm referring to the
 creation of a united system of naval bases for ships and next-generation submarines in our part of the Arctic."

Forward Arctic Aerdrome Upgrade

 According to Commander-in-Chief of the Russian Air Force, Col.-General Viktor Bondarev upgrades are planned for a Russian Arctic aerdrome "to receive Ilyushin II-76 heavy military transport planes. Plans are afoot to make the Temp aerdrome on the Kotelny Island of the New Siberian Islands archipelago off Yakutia suitable for II-76 aircraft."⁴¹³

New Arctic Territory Discovered - Yaya Island

Located in the Laptev Sea, a tiny island named Yaya Island was discovered. The island is approximately 500 square meters in size and now part of Russian territory. The claim of Yaya Island is another step towards Russia's presence and resurgence on the arctic.⁴¹⁴ Russian pilots discovered the location of the island in October 2014, and the location was confirmed by the Admiral Vladimirsky research ship.⁴¹⁵

Emergency rescue centres⁴¹⁶

- "According to the Ministry of Civil Defense, Emergencies and Disaster Relief (EMERCOM), which oversees the centers, Russia currently operates four centers in the Arctic located in Murmansk, Arkhangelsk, Dudinka, and Naryan-Mar, which opened between 2013-2016."
- "Russia announced plans to open two additional emergency rescue centers along the Northern Sea Route (NSR).
 The new centers will be located in Pevek and Anadyr in the Chukotka region and will provide additional search and rescue capabilities along the Arctic shipping route."

1.2 Equipment

1.2.1 Air

The Russian governmental military-industrial commission proposes to deploy, beginning in 2016, a series of airships in Arctic regions, designed for surveillance of oil installations and military objects. The airships would be equipped with thermal cameras, laser devices, radio locators and video cameras. The commission promotes the idea as a highly cost-efficient means of monitoring Arctic developments.⁴¹⁷

In late 2013 the Russian Northern Fleet late opened the airfield at Kotelny, one of the main islands at the archipelago, which had housed a research station that was abandoned in 1993. The new base will protect offshore oil and gas resources in the area and keep an eye on the growing number of ships sailing along the Northern Sea Route. In March

⁴¹² "Russia to create united naval base system for ships. Subs in Arctic-Putin," RT News, 22 April 2014, http://rt.com

⁴¹³ "Russian Arctic island to serve as base for military transport planes," ITAR TASS Russia News Agency, 2014, <u>http://en.itar-tass.com</u>

⁴¹⁴ Rogoway, Tyler, "Russia Annexes and Deploys Forces to Tiny but Strategic Arctic Island," Foxtrot Alpha blog, 22 October 2014, http://foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

⁴¹⁰ Korpela, Aleksi, "Of fire and ice: Russia's militarization of the Arctic," The Nato Association of Canada, 4 February 2016, http://natoassociation.ca ⁴¹¹"A military infrastructure will be created in the Arctic archipelagos of Russia," Arctic Info, 21 May 2014, http://www.arctic-info.com/

⁴¹⁵ Su, Reissa, "Russia to Reactivate Former Soviet Union Bases in Arctic Border in Response to NATO," International Business Times, 22 October 2014, http://www.ibtimes.com

⁴¹⁶ Humpert, Malte, "Two new Arctic emergency centres open along the Northern Sea Route," high North News, 30 January 2017, http://www.highnorthnews.com

⁴¹⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "Airships for Russian Arctic patrol," The Barents Observer, 12 March 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

2014, 350 Paratroopers were dropped on the island of Kotelny to demonstrate Russian capacity to operate in Arctic conditions.⁴¹⁸

Russia's new Northern Fleet battalion has been launched and unmanned aerial vehicles are flying over Russian Arctic waters. They have ranges of 10 to 150 km. "Thanks to advanced video and photo equipment, the drones can give their operators accurate information about the movements of enemy forces both at daytime and night time", the Northern Fleet reports.⁴¹⁹

Northern Fleet Aircraft⁴²⁰

Su-33 Fighter (18)



Photo Credit: Su-33 Fighter, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Russian Navy Sukhoi Su-33.jpg

Su-30SM (2)

"Compared with its predecessors, the Su-30SM has a far bigger flight range."⁴²¹



Photocredit: Su-30SM http://www.airforce-technology.com/projects/su-30sm-multirole-fighter-aircraft/

Su-25 Ground Attack Fighters (5)



Photo Credit: Su-25 UB, used for combat and training http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Russian Air Force Su-25.jpg

⁴¹⁸ Staalesen, Atle, "Arctic here we come! Russia drops 350 paratroopers over the far northern New Siberian Islands in one of the country's biggest airdrop operations in the Arctic ever," The Barents Observer, 17 March 2014, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁴¹⁹ Staalesen, Atle, "First Northern Fleet drones taking off," The Barents Observer, 4 April 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

⁴²⁰ "The Military Balance 2012," IISS, 7 March 2012, <u>https://www.iiss.org</u>

⁴²¹ Staalesen, Atle, "New fighter jets for Northern Fleet," The Barents Observer, 3 January 2017, http://barentsobserver.com

Tu-142 Anti-Submarine Warfare (13)



Photo Credit: Sergey Krivchikov, *Tu-142 Anti-Submarine Warfare* http://www.airliners.net/photo/India---Navy/Tupolev-Tu-142/1184007/L/

Tu-160M2 Blackjacks 2023



Photo credit: Military-today.com, Tu-160M2 http://www.military-today.com

- "In 2015 it was announced that Russian MoD plans to relaunch production of the Tu-160. Newly build bombers will be fitted with new engines, new radars and new avionics."⁴²²
- "Serial production of the Tu-160M2 is to be implemented starting from 2023," said Russian deputy defence minister Yury Borisov in July of 2015.⁴²³

II-38 Maritime Patrol (14)

II-20 Electronic Warfare and Electronic Intelligence

II-112V Light Military and Transport plane⁴²⁴



Photo Credit: Marina Lystseva, TASS, Mock-up of the II-112V, http://tass.com/defense/948235

- "Russia will begin the trials of its new Ilyushin II-112V military transport plane at the end of this year..."
- "The plane is expected to be rolled out in two modifications: for civil aviation (the II-112T) and military transport aviation (the II-112V). It was reported earlier that the Russian Defense Ministry wanted to order 62 such planes."

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁴²² "Tupolev TU-160 Blackjack," Military-Today.com, <u>http://www.military-today.com</u>

 ⁴²³ Novichkov, Nikolai, "Russia's future PAK DA bomber to be delayed by Tu-160M2 production," IHS Janes Defence Weekly, 21 July 2015, http://www.janes.com
 ⁴²⁴ "Russia to begin trials of new military transport plane in late 2017," TASS, 29 May 2017, http://tass.com

Tu-134 Transport



Photo Credit: Gennady Misko, Tu-134 Transport, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MAGAS_Kosmos_Tupolev_Tu-

Ka-27 Anti-Submarine Warfare Helicopters



Photo Credit: US Navy, Ka-27 Anti-Submarine Warfare Helicopter, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kamov_Ka-27PS.JPEG

Ka-29 Transport Helicopters

- Aircraft in the Russian Arctic support the Northern Fleet or northern Russia
- Many do not have the range to operate in the Arctic area beyond Russian territory

Mil Mi-8AMTSh-VA rotorcraft



Photo Credit: Mark Agnor, Sputnik News, Mil Mi-8AMTSh-VA rotorcraft, http://sputniknews.com/russia/20160319/1036576005/russia-helicopter-arctic.html

- In March 2016, the Northern Fleet accepted its first polar-optimised Mil Mi-8AMTSh-VA rotorcraft, with capability to operate in temperatures down to -40°C and fly out to 1,300km using auxiliary fuel tanks.⁴²⁵
- The Russian military will reportedly receive 5 more in 2017, which are custom-made for Arctic conditions.⁴²⁶ As of July 2017, deliveries are ahead of schedule.⁴²⁷
- "The contract for the helicopters was signed in February 2015 and is being fulfilled via the Ulan-Ude Aviation Enterprise, in a deal that will provide helicopter deliveries until 2020, according to Tass."

⁴²⁵ Stevenson, Beth, "Russian military accepts Arctic Mi-8https://www.flightglobal.com/news/articles/russian-military-accepts-arctic-mi-8-rotorcraft-419559/

⁴²⁶ Ziezulewicz , Geoff, "Russia getting helicopters for Arctic operations," 25 May 2016, United Press International, http://www.upi.com

⁴²⁷ Makov, Valentin, "Early delivery of Arctic helicopters," 18 July 2017, Russian Aviation News, http://www.rusaviainsider.com

⁴²⁸ Ziezulewicz , Geoff, "Russia getting helicopters for Arctic operations," United Press International, 25 May 2016, http://www.upi.com

Tu-142 and II-38 maritime Reconnaissance Aircraft resumed regular missions near or over the Arctic in 2007⁴²⁹

- Long-range Tu-22 bombers resumed patrols beyond Russia in 2007⁴³⁰, currently 100-120 in service in Northern Fleet.
- In 2012 Russia announced its intention to return to Arctic airfields that were closed after the end of the Cold War
 - o Novaya Zemlya
 - Naryan-Mar
 - Graham Bell Island⁴³²
 - These plans were later modified earlier plans to base MiG-31 aircraft in Novaya Zemlya were reversed in February 2013.⁴³³
- A squadron of Mig-31 long-range fighter interceptors are to be stationed on the Novaya Zemlya archipelago in the Arctic.⁴³⁴

Forward S-400 Triumf anti-aircraft weapon system

- A new regiment of air defense missile systems for the newly-created Arctic Command
- Deployed in 2015 on the Novaya Zemlya archipelago:
 - An officer from the Russian General Staff told TASS during the 5th Arctic Today and Tomorrow International Forum that, "Two S-400 regiments have been activated and deployed to the Novaya Zemlya Archipelago and the city of Tiksi in Yakutia this year under the program on reinforcing the 2014-formed Arctic force, with the program dubbed Northern Fleet - Unified Strategic Command."⁴³⁵
- Early in 2014 an air defense unit based in the Kola Peninsula was equipped with S-400 missile systems.⁴³⁶
 - Russian Armed Forces inform that, in 2017, another unit equipped with the S-400 will become operational on the Kola Peninsula.⁴³⁷
- Two S-400 anti-aircraft missile systems have been moved towards the Finnish border "to replace the older S-300 rockets".

Forward Deployment of MiG-31 Interceptors



Photo Credit: Dimitry Pichugin Russian Air Force MiG-31 BM, http://www.airliners.net/photo/Russia---Air/Mikoyan-Gurevich-MiG-31BM/2126525/L/

Russia is deploying its fastest interceptors, the MiG-31, to a Northern air base. According to RIA Novosti: "Starting from 2017, the Russian Air Force will base MiG-31 interceptor jets and tactical aircraft at a Russian Arctic airfield in the urban settlement of Tiksi in northernmost Sakha Republic, Commander Col. Gen. Viktor Bondarev said Wednesday." ⁴³⁹

⁴²⁹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 9.

⁴³⁰ Huebert, Rob, Exner-Pirot, Heather, Lajeunesse, Adam, and Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, 2012, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

⁴³¹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁴³² "Russia to Reopen Arctic Airbases," RIANOVOST, 30 May 2012. http://en.rian.ru/military_news/20120530/173757083.html

⁴³³ Pettersen, Trude, "Russia drops Arctic air force plans," The Barents Observer, 4 February 2013, http://barentsobserver.com

⁴³⁴ Kislyakov, Andrei, "Russia deploys Arctic troops," RBTH, 2 November 2012, http://rbth.ru

⁴³⁵ "Russia deployed two S-400 air defence missile regiments in Arctic in 2015 – General Staff," TASS, 8 December 2015, http://tass.ru

⁴³⁶ "Russia to deploy regiment of S-400 launchers on Novaya Zemlaya 2015," TASS, 30 December 2014, http://tass.ru

⁴³⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "Missile complex S-400 on guard in Kola Peninsula," The Barents Observer, 11 January 2017, http://barentsobserver.com

⁴³⁸ "Russia moves missiles to Finnish border," RCINet, 23 September 2016, http://www.rcinet.ca/

⁴³⁹ Ballaban, Michael, "Russia is Deploying Its Fastest Interceptors To The Arctic Full-Time," Foxtrot Alpha blog, 16 October 2014, <u>http://foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com/</u>

SA-22 Pantsir-S1 Short-range air defence system



Photocredit: military-today.com, SA-22 Pantsir-S1 http://www.military-today.com/missiles/pantsyr.htm

- As of August 2015, TASS reported that Russia is building up, and already operating, an advanced tracking system to
 monitor air and water movement. The system is already widely used by Russian military but has been modified to
 withstand extreme Arctic conditions.⁴⁴⁰
 - "By the end of this year [2016] already the first samples of the new Pantsir-SA self-propelled anti-aircraft complex designed for combat actions in the Arctic conditions will become operational in the Aerospace Forces and the Northern Fleet," Lt. Gen. Viktor Gumennyy told the Russian News Service radio station.⁴⁴¹
- Range of 19 miles and able to function in temperatures as low as -58F⁴⁴²
- "The newly modified system will likely be mounted on a new chassis developed for <u>Russia</u>'s third-generation Armata tank", FMSO reported.

Arctic version of Tor short-range air defense missile system

- Russia is developing, and already operating, an advanced tracking system to monitor air and water movement. The system, developed by Russian defense manufacturer Almaz-Antey, specializes in short-range counterattacks on air and sea missiles.⁴⁴⁴ Radio-radar units and an air defense <u>missile regiment</u> equipped with S-300 missile systems were put on combat duty on the Franz Joseph Land, Novaya Zemlya, Severnaya Zemlya and New Siberian Islands archipelagos.⁴⁴⁵
- By the end of 2017, the upgrade to the Tor-M2DT anti-missile system for Arctic applications will be completed.⁴⁴⁶

Complex Arctic monitoring and control system by 2025⁴⁴⁷

- RTI Systems Corporation developing a system that can monitor air, water, underwater and land.
- Cost of system estimated at \$93M

Sukhoi T-50s

- "...while flight-testing is not yet complete, UAC expects to sign a contract with the Russian Aerospace Forces to begin serial production of the T-50 in the fall of this year," according to the Russian-language daily *Izvestia*.
- Deliveries of 12 new stealth fighters are set to begin in 2017. Depending on the results of operational testing for these 12, Moscow may decide to invest in more.

Over-the-horizon (OTH) radar technology

- "In 2017, the Russian Defense Ministry plans to buy several radar units for the Navy. They will be deployed in the Arctic, as well as in southern and western Russia," said RTI CEO Sergei Boyev." 448
 - Russia will complete its Arctic radar coverage by "deploying state-of-the-art Konteiner and Podsolnukh over-the-horizon radars. These systems will establish a radar field 900 miles to 1,200 miles deep beyond the country's borders, providing protection against surprise aerial and sea-surface attacks."⁴⁴⁹

⁴⁴⁰ Howell, Kellen, "Russia planting new anti-aircraft missiles in Arctic," The Washington Times, 19 August, 2015, http://www.washingtontimes.com

⁴⁴¹ "Russian army to get Pantsir-SA systems for Arctic in late 2016," TASS, 20 August 2016, http://tass.com

⁴⁴² Howell, Kellen, "Russia planting new anti-aircraft missiles in Arctic," The Washington Times, 19 August, 2015, http://www.washingtontimes.com

⁴⁴³ Howell, Kellen, "Russia planting new anti-aircraft missiles in Arctic," The Washington Times, 19 August, 2015, http://www.washingtontimes.com

⁴⁴⁴ "Russia building new Tor missile for Arctic defence, TASS reports," Radio Free Europe, 3 March 2016, <u>http://www.rferl.org</u>

⁴⁴⁵ Staalesen, Atle, "Russia deploys S-300 in Novaya Zemlya," The Barents Observer, 9 December 2015, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com

⁴⁴⁶ "Russia to develop Tor air defense missile system's arctic version," TASS, 23 March 2017, <u>http://tass.com</u>

⁴⁴⁷ "Drones and satellites: Russia to create Arctic complex monitoring system by 2025," RT News, 7 August 2015, https://www.rt.com

⁴⁴⁸ "Russian Defense Ministry to deploy Arctic radar in 2017," 27 June 2016, The Arctic, http://arctic.ru/

⁴⁴⁹ Sevryugin, Sergei, "Russia strengthens its radar defenses in the arctic," Russia Beyond the Headlines, 10 February, 2017, http://rbth.com

- "...simultaneously detects, tracks and identifies up to 300 naval and 100 air targets in automatic mode, calculates their coordinates and guides ship-borne weapons and air defense systems toward them." ⁴⁵⁰
- "It is immune to stealth technology and uses a gigantic antenna array up to five kilometers long and five meters tall, to identify aerial targets 500 kilometers away and sea targets up to 400 kilometers away."⁴⁵¹VRT-300 system (rotorcraft UAVs)⁴⁵²Russian Helicopters (part of Rostech Corp.) is prototyping helicopter drones for the purpose of Russian ice observation and operation in the Arctic.
- Designed in two versions:
 - Arctic Supervision has side-looking radar and is designed for the purpose of developing the Northwest Passage's transport system
 - Opticvision is capable of increased flying range is designed to improve "diagnostic assessment, prevention, and liquidation of emergency situations in exploration and transportation of energy sources".

1.2.2 Land

Russian Defense Minister Sergei Shoigu has ordered increased numbers of new vehicles to the Arctic armed forces. As of April 2016, the ministry has announced "the beginning of shipments of a number of modern and advanced vehicles, including the Taifun, the Bulava, the Bulat, the Volk, and the Tigr-M military multipurpose vehicles."⁴⁵³

Airfield Reconstruction

 By year 2018, Russia intends to have a total of nine operative Arctic airfields, some of which are under modernization, some under total reconstruction.⁴⁵⁴

Anti-Missile Radar System in Vorkuta

- Construction of an anti-missile early warning radar station began in September of 2015, and is set to be completed by 2020.
- Can detect any launch from any direction, according to Chief of Staff of the Main Centre for Missile Warning of the Russian Aerospace Forces, Colonel Viktor Tymoshenko⁴⁵⁵
- To supplement stations in Pechora and Olenegorsk⁴⁵⁶

The Frigate (UAV)⁴⁵⁷

- "The Frigate unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV), being developed by the St. Petersburg-based Kronshtadt Group, is expected to become part of the Russian aviation force, which will be deployed in the Arctic region."
- Currently undergoing trials, and went through first test flight in Moscow region

Possible New Russian Tanks Stationed in Arctic

- Mass production of the T-14 Armata tank will begin in 2018.⁴⁵⁸ The battle tank is "equipped with a special blend of steel to extremely low temperatures" and is equipped with 44S-SV-SH armor.⁴⁵⁹ The Russian Defense Ministry has not openly declared to locate the tanks in the Arctic, though considering the tank's technology and the competition for Arctic resources, there is reason to believe they will be deployed there.
- Russia's 2017 May 9 Victoria Day parade will showcase Arctic modifications to the T-72B3M tank.⁴⁶⁰

⁴⁵⁵ "Russian missile warning system can detect mass launch of ballistic missiles," Sputnik News, 15 August 2015, http://sputniknews.com

⁴⁶⁰ "Russia rules out arms race in the Arctic but stands firm on its interests," Sputnik News, 9 April 2017, <u>http://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁵⁰ "Russian Defense Ministry to deploy Arctic radar in 2017," 27 June 2016, The Arctic, <u>http://arctic.ru/</u>

⁴⁵¹ "All Seeing Eye: Russia Builds Gigantic Military Radar in Arctic," Sputnik News, 29 October 2016, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁵² Zhukovsky, "New Russian helicopter drone for Arctic exploration unveiled at MAKS airshow," TASS, 18 July 2017, http://tass.com

⁴⁵³ "Heavy-duty" A look at Russia's Arctic Forces' Military Vehicles," Sputnik News, 10 April 2016, <u>http://sputniknews.com/</u>

^{455 &}quot;Russian missile warning system can detect mass launch of ballistic missiles," Sputnik News, 15 August 2015, http://sputniknews.com

⁴⁵⁶ "Russia begins construction of Anti-Missile Radar in Arctic," Sputnik News, 3 October 2015, <u>http://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁵⁷ "Flight model of Russia's heavy duty transformer drone undergoes trials," RT News, 16 May 2016, <u>https://www.rt.com</u>

⁴⁵⁸ "Russia to start churning out Armata tanks in 2018," Sputnik News, 7 February 2017, <u>http://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁵⁹ Denis Kungurov (14 November 2014), "Secret new Russian tank could be deployed to Arctic zones," Russia Beyond the Headlines, <u>http://rbth.com/</u>

Forward Radar and Ground Guidance Systems

 Russia plans to "establish radar and ground guidance systems for Cape Schmidt's Wrangel Island and Franz Josef Land."⁴⁶¹

Forward Drone Squadron

- November 2014 "A squadron of unmanned aerial vehicles will be deployed in Russia's Arctic region within a month. The drone grouping will be stationed in the Chukotka autonomous area to serve the control zone in Russia's Eastern Military District..."⁴⁶² The first trial flights of the Orlan-10 drones is planned for early 2015. "The drones will ensure sea navigation security and conduct coastal air reconnaissance over Russian territorial waters."⁴⁶³
- November 2015 "Orlan-10 and Forpost (Outpost) unmanned aerial vehicles are already deployed close to the regional capital of Chukotka, said chief spokesman of the Eastern Military District Alexander Gordeyev."
 - "The unit will be soon replenished with new airborne devices capable of performing tasks at a distance of more than 1,500 kilometres,' he told TASS."⁴⁶⁴

Forward 13 Airfields and Air-Ground Firing Range

- October 2014 The head of the National Defense Management Centre, Lt. Gen. Mikhail Mizintsev, said: ""We are planning to build 13 airfields, an air-ground firing range, as well as ten radar and vectoring posts.." According to the Russian news Izvestia, construction for military facilities has already started.⁴⁶⁵
- February 2016 6 of the 13 airbases have been operational since December 2015. "These are the Nagurskoye and Rogachevo airbases in Russia's western Arctic, and Sredny Ostrov, Temp, Mys Shmidta, and Zyvozdny airbases in eastern parts."⁴⁶⁶

1.2.3 Sea

Russian President Putin, in warning of growing threats of terrorism in the Arctic, has signed into law a new measure to permit oil companies to establish their own armed security forces.

"According to the new legislation, the Russian oil companies will from now on be entitled to establish their own protection units. Newspaper Rossiiskaya Gazeta believes the companies will end up hiring not "one hundred security guards", but rather "thousands of well-armed people, equipped with automatic weapons, vehicles, vessels and aircrafts". Most of the people are likely to be former military personnel, police officers and special forces agents, the newspaper writes. President Putin said Russia "will continue to invest significant means in the Arctic, strengthen security and resolve problems connected with the social and economic development of the region."⁴⁶⁷

In April of 2016, commander-in-chief of Russia's Navy, Admiral Vladimir Korolyov, stated that, "the total strength of Russia's naval forces in the Arctic and the World Ocean currently stands at 100 combat and logistics ships." 468

Naval vessels assigned to the Northern Fleet

The Northern Fleet holds 42 of Russia's 72 submarines, including 8 of its 13 ballistic missile submarines (SSBNs), 4 of its 9 cruise missile submarines (SSGN), and 38 major surface combatants, including Russia's largest aircraft carrier, the Kuznetsov and the large cruiser Pyotor Veliki. ⁴⁶⁹

⁴⁶¹ Su, Reissa, "Russia to Reactivate Former Soviet Union Bases in Arctic Border in Response to NATO," International Business Times, 22 October 2014, <u>http://www.ibtimes.com</u>

⁴⁶² "Russia to deploy drone grouping in Arctic region by yearend," TASS, 27 November 2014, <u>http://itar-tass.com</u>

⁴⁶³ "Russia's Arctic group to get Orlan-10 drones by year end," TASS, 29 December 2014, <u>http://itar-tass.com</u>

⁴⁶⁴ "New drone squadron protects Russian interest in the Arctic," The Siberian Times, 23 November 2016, http://siberiantimes.com

⁴⁶⁵ Nilsen, Thomas, "Arms the Arctic with 13 new airfields," The Barents Observer, 29 October 2014, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁴⁶⁶ Korpela, Aleksi, "Of fire and ice: Russia's militarization of the Arctic," The Nato Association of Canada, 4 February 2016, http://natoassociation.ca

⁴⁶⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "Russian military builds four more Arctic bases," The Barents Observer, 23 October 2015, <u>http://www.thebarentsobserver.com</u> ⁴⁶⁸ "Russian Naval Presence in the Arctic, World Ocean goes up to 100 ships – commander," TASS, 21 April 2016, http://tass.ru

⁴⁶⁹ "Many of these vessels are not based in the Northern Fleet for Arctic strategic/security purposes, but rather relate to Russia's engagements more broadly, e.g. its SSBNs." https://www.state.gov/documents/organization/262585.pdf

Submarines

Vice Admiral Clive Johnstone, Commander of NATO's Maritime Command, reported in February 2016 that NATO is seeing Russian submarine activity in the North Atlantic return to Cold War levels. NATO's top naval commander also noted that Russian submarines have made a major jump in technical capability.⁴⁷⁰

SSBN (nuclear powered and nuclear armed ballistic missile subs - 9)

- Developments:
 - More active since 2009 (when one broke up through ice and launched a ballistic missile)⁴⁷¹
 - Some SSBNs are being modernized, while major new construction is underway
 - Modernized vessels:
 - In late 2017, "the first of the upgraded Borei-class submarines, the Knyaz Vladimir, will be floated out".⁴⁷²
 - New vessels:
 - According to official data in March 2017, there are two new Borey-class submarines the Yuri Dolgoruky and the Vladimir Monomakh — in service with the Northern Fleet. One entered the Northern Fleet in January 2013, and the second entered in December 2013.⁴⁷³
 - Both operate out of the Northern Fleet's main nuclear submarine base in Gadzhiyevo.⁴⁷⁴
 - The Borey-class subs "will form the mainstay of the strategic submarine fleet, replacing aging Typhoon, Delta-3 and Delta-4 class boats."⁴⁷⁵
 - Planning eight Borey subs by 2020, each to carry 16 to 20 missiles (each missile containing 6 nuclear warheads).⁴⁷⁶
 - Two nuclear submarines of the Russian Northern Fleet held an underwater torpedo duel in the Barents Sea.
 Yuri Dolgoruky dueled against the multipurpose Obninsk submarine in a combat training in March 2017.⁴⁷⁷

SSN (nuclear powered attack subs, not nuclear armed - 13)

- Developments:
 - September 2014 Russia is building new Yasen-class submarines. The first Yasen joined the Northern Fleet in June
 and is called the Severodvinsk. Three additional vessels are supposed to follow, which will phase out the Sovietera Akula and Alfa-class attack submarines⁴⁷⁸
 - In December 2012 the first of its new Yasen Class cruise missile SSN's undertook a new round of sea trials⁴⁷⁹
 - Can potentially carry nuclear armed missiles
 - \circ Will likely be one of the vessels equipped with the new Futlyar torpedo Russia is testing⁴⁸⁰
 - Sea trials to date have disclosed extensive flaws in a ship experiencing missed deadlines and cost over-runs⁴⁸¹
 - The operational radius of the northern submarine fleet has been expanded to include much of the Arctic Ocean⁴⁸²

⁴⁷⁰ De Larrinaga, Nicholas, "Russian submarine activity topping Cold War level," 2 February 2016, IHS Jane's Deference Weekly, http://www.janes.com

⁴⁷¹ Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, p. 18, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

⁴⁷² Nilsen, Thomas, "Larger portion of Russia's nukes will be on subs in Arctic waters," The Barents Observer, 3 March 2017, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u> ⁴⁷³ "Russian nuclear submarines hold underwater torpedo 'duel' in Arctic," Sputnik News, 12 March 2017, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁷⁴ Pettersen, Trude, "Two new nuclear-powered submarines to Northern Fleet, The Barents Observer, 3 January 2013, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁴⁷⁵ Pettersen, Trude, "Two new nuclear-powered submarines to Northern Fleet, The Barents Observer, 3 January 2013, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁴⁷⁶ Digges, Charles, "Launch of new Russia sub class to put more nuclear missiles at sea, The Bellona Foundation, 14 January 2013, http://www.democraticunderground.com

http://www.democraticunderground.com 477 "Russian nuclear submarines hold underwater torpedo 'duel' in Arctic," Sputnik News, 12 March 2017, https://sputniknews.com

⁴⁷⁸ Bodner, Matthew, Eremenko Alexey, "Russia Starts Building Military Bases in the Arctic," The Moscow Times, 8 September 2014, http://www.themoscowtimes.com/

⁴⁷⁹ Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, p. 32, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

⁴⁸⁰ Staalesen, Atle, "Navy takes on new torpedo," 30 June, 2016, The Barents Observer, <u>http://thebarentsobserver.com/</u>

⁴⁸¹ Digges, Charles, "Shaky Severodvinsk nuclear sub sets to sea for trials – again," The Bellona Foundation, 5 November 2012, http://www.bellona.org

⁴⁸² Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, p. 32, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>



Photo Credit: US Navy, Russian Northern Fleet Victor III http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Victor III class submarine 1997.jpg

SSK (attack submarines with anti-submarine warfare capability – not nuclear powered – 7)

SSAN (submersible auxiliary support vessel – nuclear powered – 7)

SSGN (cruise missile attack submarines)

SSA (submersible auxiliary support vessel - not nuclear powered)

Much of Russia's naval redevelopment is focused on capabilities for operations in the north, but not necessarily
focused on Arctic patrols.

Nuclear-powered research submarine

- "Russian Navy to commission Project 09852 KS-139 Belgorod special mission submarine in 2018"⁴⁸³
- "Can be used for both military and civilian purposes along the Arctic shelf"

Strategic nuclear warheads based in the Arctic (192)

In March 2012, reporting under the New START agreement, Russia indicated that there are 6 Delta IV SSBNs deployed with the Northern Fleet

- Each is capable of carrying 16 missiles for a total of 96 missiles
- Each missile is capable of carrying 4 nuclear warheads for a total of 384
- Because 3 of the Delta IV subs were then undergoing overhauls, a total of 192 nuclear warheads were deployed in Russia's Arctic at the time.⁴⁸⁵

According to TASS, *"Podmoskovye* (NATO reporting name Delta-IV) was launched on 11 August 2015 after undergoing "in-depth modernization" at the Zvezdochka shipyard in Severodvinsk since 1999."

• "Podmoskovye" will probably be used as carrier for the "Losharik" deep diving titanium submarine.⁴⁸⁷



Photo Credit: US Navy, Submarine Delta IV class, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Submarine Delta IV class.jpg

⁴⁸³ "Project 09852 Belgorod," Naval Forces News, 27 April 2017, http://www.navyrecognition.com

⁴⁸⁴ Nilsen, Thomas, "Now, Russia builds a submarine even bigger than the Typhoon," The Barents Observer, 3 May 2017, https://thebarentsobserver.com

⁴⁸⁵ "Russian strategic nuclear forces: Current Status", RussianForces.org, last modified March 2012, <u>http://russianforces.org/navy/</u>

⁴⁸⁶ Pettersen, Trude, "Russian nuclear submarine launched after modernization," The Barents Observer, 13 August 2015, http://barentsobserver.com ⁴⁸⁷ Pettersen, Trude, "Russian nuclear submarine launched after modernization," The Barents Observer, 13 August 2015, http://barentsobserver.com

Construction, make a submarine administration and indefinization, The barents observer, 15 August 2015, http://barentsobserver.com

"Russia resumed testing of the submarine-launched ballistic missile Bulava this summer. The country's two newest strategic nuclear-powered submarines will start trials as soon as the ice conditions in the White Sea will allow." The *Vladimir Monomakh* and *Alexander Nevsky* "will conduct four single launches of the Bulava missiles this summer. The test will be conducted from the usual exercise area in the White Sea to the Kura test site in Russia's far-eastern Kamchatka territory, ITAR-TASS reports." A September 2013 launch failed and further trials were then halted. "Test launches of the Bulava have been experiencing significant problems. Of the 19 or 20 test launches that have been done since 2004 eight have been officially declared unsuccessful. However, some analysts suggest that in reality the number of failures is considerably higher."⁴⁸⁸ September 2016 - Vladimir Monomakh, the third ballistic missile submarine of the Project 955 class, "was expected to conduct a salvo launch of Bulava missiles in June 2016, but it has left without launching the missiles. It is possible that it will launch the missiles from the Pacific, but maybe it won't - at the time Alexander Nevskiy arrived in the Pacific it was reported that it will conduct a launch from there, but it didn't."⁴⁸⁹ The first November 2015 launch was not successful as one of the missiles was reported to have malfunctioned.⁴⁹⁰

Russia has increased the operational radius of its Northern Submarine Fleet by re-establishing its Northern Fleet base in Alakurtti, the small town located about 50 km from the border to Finland. The base will be home to about 3000 radioelectronics experts. Since 2009 the base has hosted only a border guard unit. A key objective for the new base personnel will be to keep track of international air activities in the Arctic, according to a report in Izvestia.⁴⁹¹ For more information see 'Forward Military Base – Alakurtti Village'.

Underwater Drones

Klavesin-2R-PM⁴⁹²



Photocredit: Rubin Design Bureau http://thebarentsobserver.com

- Russia's new underwater drone for Arctic waters announced in Rubin Central Design Bureau of Marine Technology's 2015 annual report
- Can dive 6,000 meters and is intended for research
- "6,5 m long, 1 metre diameter, has a weight f 3,7 tons and a maximum cruising range of 50 km from its mother vessel," according to a livejournal blog discussing Russian military news.
- Rubin Director Igor Villeneuve says Klavesin-2R-PM has "increased autonomy and depth in addition to surveillance and search functions."

⁴⁸⁸ Pettersen, Trude, "Russia to resume Bulava tests," The Barents Observer, 15 April 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

⁴⁸⁹ "Vladamir Monomakh begins transfer to the Pacific," Russian Strategic Nuclear Forces, last modified 16 August 2016, <u>http://russianforces.org</u>

⁴⁹⁰ "Salvo Bulava launch from Vladimir Monomakh - second attempt expected in June," Russianforces.org, 11 March 2016, http://russianforces.org ⁴⁹¹ Staalesen, Atle, "Moving 3000 intelligence officers to Finnish border," The Barents Observer, 14 March 2014, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁴⁹² Nilson, Thomas, "This is Russia's new unique underwater drone for Arctic waters," The Barents Observer, 12 July 2016, <u>http://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

Surface Ships

Aircraft Carriers

- Russia's Navy currently only has one aircraft carrier, Admiral Kuznetsov, which is part of the Northern Fleet⁴⁹³
 - Will be getting upgrades in 2017, including advanced electronics, radar, and onboard navigation gear.⁴⁹⁴
 - Additionally, plans for the building of a new vessel to replace the Kuznetsov have formed. However, the contract to build the Shtorm (heavy aircraft carrier) is on hold and likely won't be signed until 2025.
- There are plans for "five or six carrier battle groups," most of which would be based in northern waters⁴⁹⁶
 - These new carriers are to be smaller than Russia's current ship, a more versatile combat ship, say some reports, that could include drones⁴⁹⁷
 - Admiral Gorshkov is one example of these new aircraft carriers. She weighs 500 tons and is 135 meters long, and will be commissioned into the Northern Fleet by the end of 2017.

Amphibious Assault Ships

- Russia ordered Mistral class amphibious assault/helicopter carriers from France in 2010 and 2011 ("the first will be based with the Pacific Fleet and the second with the Northern Fleet")
- Russia has however cancelled or postponed plans to build two more under licence from France⁴⁹⁹
- Designated Vladivostok Class by the Russians, each of the ships is to carry:
 - 30 helicopters
 - Anti-missile cannons
 - Anti-aircraft missiles
 - Grenade launchers
 - 450 marines⁵⁰⁰
 - The two ships are expected to be delivered in October 2013 and October 2014.⁵⁰¹
- As of September 2014, in the wake of the Ukraine crisis, France halted the delivery of a Vladivostok warship to Russia. Following France's decision, Russia's Deputy Defence Minister Yury Borisov said, "Although of course it is unpleasant and adds to certain tensions in relations with our French partners, the cancelling of this contract will not be a tragedy for our modernisation."⁵⁰²



Photo Credit: BPS Dixmude, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BPC Dixmude.jpg

⁴⁹⁷ Litovkin, Viktor, "Russian Navy plans further expansion," Russia and India Report, 14 January 2013, <u>http://indrus.in</u>

⁴⁹⁸Staalesen, Atle, "Rogozin:Aircraft carrier will be ready for long-distance mission," The Barents Observer, 10 March 2016, <u>http://www.thebarentsobserver.com</u>

⁴⁹³ "Phasing NATO out of the Arctic: Russia arming up Northern Fleet with new weapons," Sputnik News, 1 June 2017, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁹⁴ "Phasing NATO out of the Arctic: Russia arming up Northern Fleet with new weapons," Sputnik News, 1 June 2017, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁹⁵ "Phasing NATO out of the Arctic: Russia arming up Northern Fleet with new weapons," Sputnik News, 1 June 2017, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

⁴⁹⁶ Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, p. 18, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

⁴⁹⁹ "Russia postpones building 2 Mistral class amphibious assault ships locally," Defense Update Blog, 26 December 2012, http://defenseupdates.blogspot.ca ⁵⁰⁰ "The Vladivostock Class," The Strategy Page, 2 April 2013, <u>http://www.strategypage.com</u>

⁵⁰¹ "Russia's first Mistral-class ship stern launched," RT.Com, 26 June 2013, <u>http://rt.com/news/mistral-ship-stern-russia-261/</u>

⁵⁰² "Ukraine crisis: France halted warship delivery to Russia," BBC News, 3 September 2014, http://www.bbc.com

Kirov-Class Battlecruiser

Kirov Class (1144.2)⁵⁰³

• Ship has capacity for three Kamov Ka-27PL or Ka-25RT helicopters



Photo Credit: US Navy, Kirov-class battlecruiser, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Kirov-class_battlecruiser.jpg

Yuri Andropov 504

- Heavy missile cruiser and flag ship of Russians Northern Fleet
- Ship part of naval patrols to monitor shipping routes in Russian territory
- In 2016, it re-entered service in the Barents Sea after 2 years of reparations. A source from the Russian shipbuilding industry reported that Pyotr Velicky should undergo armament modernization in 2019-2022⁵⁰⁵.



Photo Credit: Russian International News Agency, Russian battlecruiser Pyotr Velikiy, http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:RIAN archive 669522 Longdistance voyage of Pyotr Veliky nuclear-powered cruiser.jpg

Admiral Nakhimov

Currently undergoing repairs, but will join the Northern Fleet upon completion.⁵⁰⁶



Photo Credit: US Navy, Kalinin 1991 now known as Admiral Nakhimov cruiser, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:BCGN Kalinin 1991.jpg

⁵⁰³ "Kirov Class (Tye 1144.2) (Peter the Great), Russia," NavalTechnology,com, no date listed, <u>http://www.naval-technology.com</u>

⁵⁰⁴ Kramer, Andrew, "Russia Preparing Patrols of Arctic Shipping Lanes," New York Times, 14 September 2013, <u>http://www.nytimes.com/</u>

⁵⁰⁵ Pettersen, Trude, "Battle cruiser "Pyotr Veliky" is back in the Barents Sea," Barents Observer, 18 May 2016, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com ⁵⁰⁶ "Phasing NATO out of the Arctic: Russia arming up Northern Fleet with new weapons," Sputnik News, 1 June 2017, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

Admiral Grigorovich-class frigate

- The lead ship of Russia's Project 11356M frigate class, *Admiral Grigorovich*, was commissioned into service March 11 2016.
- Expected to be shipped from the Yantar Shipyard in Kaliningrad to join the Black Sea Fleet in Sevastopol.
- Igor Ponomarev, vice president of United Shipbuilding Corporation (Yantar's parent company), said that the second and third ships of the class, *Admiral Essen* and *Admiral Makarov*, will also be commissioned in 2016. A total of six Admiral Grigorovich-class frigates have been ordered by the Russian Navy, but construction on the final three has been suspended because they rely on Ukrainian-built turbines.⁵⁰⁷



Photo Credit: United Shipbuilding Corporation, http://www.janes.com/article/58801/russian-navy-receives-first-admiralgrigorovich-class-frigate

Yury Ivanov⁵⁰⁸

- Russia's biggest information-gathering ship successfully transferred from Baltic to Northern Fleet in 2015.
- Permanently stationed at Severomorsk naval base, it is 312 feet (95 meters) long and 53 feet (16 meters) wide, with a displacement of 4,000 tons.
- Most important function is to penetrate US missile defence system.



Photocredit: GlobalSecurity.org http://www.globalsecurity.org

Project 22120 Purga-Class Patrol Ship⁵⁰⁹

- "The Russian Federal Security Service (FSS) has ordered a new Arctic patrol ship to assist in its northern operations with the vessel expected to be delivered at the end of October 2018."
- vessel is tailored for patrolling icy waters and is able to cut through 0.5m of sea ice with its strengthened hull.
- Likely to be based in Murmansk, whereas two previous existing Project 22120 vessels stationed in the Russian far east.

Marshal Ustinov (Slava-class destroyer) back in operation⁵¹⁰

- Docked for upgrades from 2011- 2016 but declared ready for action again as of April 2017
- Part of the Northern Fleet and considered among the most powerful ships in the Russian Navy

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁵⁰⁷ De Larrinaga, Nicholas, "Russian Navy receives first Admiral Grigorovich-class frigate," IHS Jane's Defence Weekly, 16 March 2016, http://www.janes.com

⁵⁰⁸ Rusakova, Tatyana, "Spy ship to track US missile defence system in Arctic," Russia Beyond the Headlines, 19 November 2016, <u>http://rbth.com</u> ⁵⁰⁹ Mladenov, Alex & Grozev, Krassimir, "Russia orders new patrol ship," 7 november 2016, Shephard Media, https://www.shephardmedia.com

⁵¹⁰ Staalesen, Atle, "After 5 years of upgrade, destroyer «Marshal Ustinov» is back in Barents Sea," The Barents Observer, 23 May 2017, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

Icebreakers

- Russia "has a fleet of about half a dozen [nuclear powered icebreakers] in operation, along with a larger fleet of less powerful, diesel-powered icebreakers."⁵¹¹
 - Russia is the only country producing nuclear powered icebreakers.
- Only the Northern Fleet is capable of breaking thick ice.⁵¹²
- The Kremlin has a total of approximately 40 icebreakers in use with 11 more in production⁵¹³, and more than 20 civilian icebreakers operating in Arctic⁵¹⁴

Неаvу

- One large "50 Let Pobedy" icebreaker (thick ice-breaking capacity) belongs to the Northern Fleet⁵¹⁵
- The LK-2, Project 22600 will be the world's most powerful diesel-engined icebreaker, at 146,8 meters long and 22258 tons.⁵¹⁶ The project has experienced delays and the launch has been pushed from 2015 to late 2017/early 2018.⁵¹⁷
- In 2012, Russia began the construction of a new record-breaking icebreaker: ⁵¹⁸
 - 170 meters long and 34 meters wide.
 - To be "powered by two "RITM-200" compact pressurized water reactors generating 60MWe
 - "Designed to blast through ice more than 4 meters thick and tow tankers of up to 70,000 tons displacement through Arctic ice fields."
 - Other reports say it will go through 3 meters of ice and will be able to escort vessels through the Northern Sea Route year-round⁵¹⁹
- More recently, in 2016, design for an icebreaker-class more powerful than ever was announced.⁵²⁰
 - Project 10510 was announced by Deputy Prime Minister Dmitry Rogozin at a conference entitled International Cooperation in the Arctic: New Challenges and Vectors of Development
 - Icebreaker would have 110 MW power unit and could navigate ice 4-5 meters thick, making the Northern Sea Route accessible year round.
 - According to Rogozin, "The decision to launch its construction will be taken soon."
 - "Russia's Ministry of Transport hopes for the first icebreakers of the class to be put into operation by 2024."⁵²¹
- The Arktika, Project 22220
 - Russia launched the first of three Arktika-class nuclear powered icebreakers in June 2016, ahead of its planned 2017 launch, according to Sputnik News and the shipyard where the Arktika was built.⁵²² The ship reportedly cost \$1.74 billion.⁵²³
 - First of three "new generation of 'super modern' universal-use icebreakers" built by St. Petersburg's Baltic Shipyard at a tender of \$2.3 billion.⁵²⁴ The Arktika is the lead ship of "Project 22220" and it was expected that at least two of its kind would be built by 2020, but the launch of the second vessel is likely going to occur much later.⁵²⁵ Project 22220 vessels will be capable of breaking through 13 feet of ice⁵²⁶ and will be 173 meters long and 34 meters wide.⁵²⁷

⁵¹⁸ Conan, Eve, "Breaking the Ice: Russian Nuclear-Powered Ice-Breakers," Scientific American Blog, 8 September 2012, <u>http://blogs.scientificamerican.com</u>

⁵¹¹ Conan, Eve, "Breaking the Ice: Russian Nuclear-Powered Ice-Breakers," Scientific American Blog, 8 September 2012, <u>http://blogs.scientificamerican.com</u>

⁵¹² Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵¹³ Starr, Terrell Jermaine, "Russia's Icebreakers Make it King of the Arctic and America is Just a Pauper," Foxtrot Alpha, 26 January 2017, http://foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

⁵¹⁴ Staalesen, Atle, "New icebreakers open way for Russia in Arctic," The Barents Observer, 5 May 2015, http://barentsobserver.com

⁵¹⁵ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵¹⁶ Staalesen, Atle, "New icebreakers open way for Russia in Arctic," The Barents Observer, 5 May 2015, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵¹⁷ "Baltiysky Zavod to deliver 25MW icebreaker Victor Chernomyrdin (Project 22600) in late 2017 – early 2018," Port News, 17 June 2016, http://portnews.ru/

⁵¹⁹ Pettersen, Trude, "Three new nuclear icebreakers in the pipeline," The Barents Observer, 4 November 2012, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵²⁰ "Russia starts designing a super-icebreaker," The Arctic, 13 October 2016, <u>http://arctic.ru/</u>

⁵²¹ Nilsen, Thomas, "Announces tender for fantasy-giant icebreakers," The Barents Observer, 16 September 2016, <u>http://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

⁵²² Domonoske, Camila, "Russia Launches World's Biggest, Most Powerful Icebreaker", NPR, 16 June 2016, www.npr.org

^{523 523} Starr, Terrell Jermaine, "Russia's Icebreakers Make it King of the Arctic and America is Just a Pauper," Foxtrot Alpha, 26 January 2017, http://foxtrotalpha.jalopnik.com

⁵²⁴ Staalesen, Atle, "World's biggest icebreaker on the water," The Barents Observer, 16 June 2016, <u>http://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

⁵²⁵ Charled Digges (9 May 2014), "Russia trumpets victory in new 'super modern' nuclear icebreaker project," <u>http://bellona.org/</u>

⁵²⁶ Domonoske, Camila, "Russia Launches World's Biggest, Most Powerful Icebreaker", NPR, 16 June 2016, www.npr.org

⁵²⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "World's biggest icebreaker on the water," The Barents Observer, 16 June 2016, <u>http://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

- February 2017: Russia's nuclear icebreaker port Atomflot confirmed in February 2017 that the Arktika would be commissioned a year behind schedule for a launch date of 2019 due to unpaid bills and sanctions from the west.⁵²⁸
- June 2017: "Russia's lead icebreaker, the Arktika, will be commission in June 2019, Deputy Prime Minister Dmitry Rogozin said during Prime Minister Dmitry Medvedev's meeting with his deputies. Two other sister ships are to enter service in 2020 and 2021, respectively, TASS reports."⁵²⁹



Photo Credit: Atomflot, "A mock up of the Arktika," <u>http://bellona.org/news/arctic/russian-nuclear-icebreakers-fleet/2014-05-russia-</u> trumpets-victory-new-super-modern-nuclear-icebreaker-project#bio-9

Medium / Light Icebreakers

- Four small "Project 97" icebreakers (thin ice-breaking capability) ⁵³⁰
- Ilya Muromets, Project 21180
 - Russia's first ice-capable patrol ship to be deployed to the Arctic will be laid down in 2017⁵³¹ and will be commissioned in 2019 at the latest according to the Russian Defense Ministry's Chief of the State Defense Order Implementation Department I rank Capt. Andrei Vernigora.
- "The Ilya Muromets is an 85-meter (280-feet) long electric-diesel powered icebreaker with a deadweight of 6,000 tons and is designed to help the deployment of the navy in icy conditions as well as escort or tow other ships."
- Launched on 10 June 2016⁵³⁴
- "Polyarnaya Zvezda" is the first of two vessels of Project 22100 Okean-class ice-going patrol vessels⁵³⁵ In January 2017, it made the trip to its permanent base at the port of Murmansk.⁵³⁶
 - The Polyarnaya Zvezda is 93 meters long, 15 meter wide and has a deadweight of 3,200 tons. It has a top speed of 20 knots and can operate autonomously for up to 60 days.⁵³⁷
 - Both vessels are expected to be delivered in Murmansk by December 2019.⁵³⁸
- In April 2016, two Project 23550 Ice-class patrol ships were ordered by the Russian Navy for delivery by 2020. They are capable of operating in up to 1.5-metre-thick ice.⁵³⁹
 - Project 23550, being called 'combat icebreakers', will differ from international competitors in that "they are capable of carrying heavy missiles that can strike targets hundreds of miles away, whereas these other ships are used more for localized security and ice navigation missions".⁵⁴⁰ They also carry lasers that can cut through ice.⁵⁴¹
 - The keel was laid for Ivan Papanin, the first of the two patrol icebreakers, in mid-April 2017.⁵⁴²
 - Will be 114 meters long and able to displace 7,000 tons. It is also designed to be able to go 6,000 naval miles without resupply.

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁵²⁸ Digges, Charles, "Nuclear icebreaker roll out delayed by unpaid bills and sanctions over Ukraine," Bellona, 6 March 2017, http://bellona.org

⁵²⁹ "Lead icebreaker Arktika to enter service in June 2019," The Arctic, 20 June 2017, <u>http://arctic.ru</u>

⁵³⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵³¹ "Russia to lay down first Arctic patrol ship in 2017 – Navy Deputy Commander," Sputnik News, 25 January 2017, <u>https://sputniknews.com</u>

⁵³² "Russian Navy to launch first Arctic patrol ship in 2018," Sputnik News, 10 June 2016, <u>http://sputniknews.com</u>

⁵³³ "Russia unveils new Navy icebreaker in Arctic military focus," Defence News, 11 June 2016, <u>http://www.defensenews.com</u>

⁵³⁴ "Russia unveils new Navy icebreaker in Arctic military focus," Defence News, 11 June 2016, <u>http://www.defensenews.com</u>

⁵³⁵ Pettersen, Trude, "New Vessels for Russia's Coast Guard," The Barents Observer, 2 June 2015, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵³⁶ "Polyarnaya Zvezda border patrol ship arrives at duty station in Murmansk," The Arctic, 30 Januay 2017, http://arctic.ru

⁵³⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "This is the FSB's new Arctic vessel," The Barents Observer, 30 January 2017, http://barentsobserver.com

⁵³⁸ "Project 21100 Okean," GlobalSecurity.Org, last modified 21 September 2016, <u>www.globalsecurity.org</u>

⁵³⁹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁴⁰ Rogoway, Tyler, "This is Russia's warship Built Specifically For Arctic Fighting," Time Inc., 27 March 2017, http://www.thedrive.com

⁵⁴¹ "Laser-armed nuclear icebreakers: what Russia has in store for Arctic," Sputnik News, 17 July 2017, https://sputniknews.com

⁵⁴² "Keel laid for Russian Navy's first patrol icebreaker," The Arctic, 19 April 2017, <u>http://arctic.ru</u>

⁵⁴³ "Russia lays down icebreaker patrol boat to bolster Navy's Arctic presence," RT News, 19 April 2017, www.rt.com

- The first of <u>four icebreakers of the 21180 project</u> for the Ministry of Defence was launched in 2016 and will be commissioned in 2017.⁵⁴⁴
- "Four Project-03182 'Small Arctic Sea Tanker' icebreaking support ships for use in the Arctic were ordered in 2015 and production of the first two started in October 2015." ⁵⁴⁵
- The three diesel-engined Project 21900M vessels are in service, the last setting off on its debut voyage in February 2017⁵⁴⁶. This project was developed for large-scale oil tanker assistance, as well as towing, transportation and rescue missions in icy waters. ⁵⁴⁷

Soveitsky Soyuz, Arktika-class twin-reactor icebreaker⁵⁴⁸

- Could be new Arctic headquarters, offered to the Ministry of Defence by Rosatom State Atomic Energy Corporation.
- The vessel has been undergoing modernization work after being laid-up at Atomflot north of Murmansk since 2006.
- Was expected to be ready for service by end of 2016.

Forward Coast Guard Ships

- The coast guard division of Russia's Federal Security Service plans to "deploy four new warships" in the Arctic by 2020
- These will complement the 11 border protection facilities designated for the Arctic
- The official goal is to "protect its political and economic interests in the Arctic, including military, border, and coast guard units," according to RIA Novosti.⁵⁴⁹

Bastion-P Coastal Defence System

- Russian Defense Minister Segei Shoigu plans to equip the Northern Fleet with four systems annually, as part of a plan to re-equip their coastal missile units by 2021.⁵⁵⁰
- Bastion systems, designed for coastal defense, have the capacity to engage various surface ships at ranges out to 300 kms.⁵⁵¹
- The Russian Navy's Pacific Fleet formally deployed the K-300P Bastion-P (SSC-5 'Stooge') mobile coastal defence missile system in the Kuril Islands in 2016. This followed live firing trials of the system at a training range in the Primorye Territory in July 2016."⁵⁵²

1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)

- According to SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper:⁵⁵³
 - o "Russia's ground forces in the Arctic region include naval infantry and an army brigade on the Kola Peninsula."
 - The brigade on the Kola Peninsula was established in January 2015 and are "winter-trained but are
 organized and equipped for operations in the north of Russia, not in the more inhospitable regions of
 the Arctic".
 - In addition to the brigade on the Kola Peninsula, there is another currently being established in Yakutia.
 Plans for both brigades were announced 2011, a few years after Russia announced a plan for a special military force to protect Arctic interests in March 2009.
- In October 2015, Russian deference minister Sergei Shoigu announced that a Russian military unit will be permanently stationed in the Arctic by 2018.⁵⁵⁴

⁵⁴⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁴⁵ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁴⁶ Lanteigne, Marc, "U.S. wary of Russia's Arctic military buildup," News Deeply, 13 February 2017, <u>https://www.newsdeeply.com</u>

⁵⁴⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "New icebreakers open way for Russia in Arctic," The Barents Observer, 5 May 2015, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵⁴⁸ "Russian icebreaker could be Arctic HQ," MarEx, 1 February 2016, http://www.maritime-executive.com

⁵⁴⁹ Russia to Deploy Four New Warships By 2020 to Protect Nation's Arctic Zone," RIA Novosti, 28 May 2013, <u>http://en.ria.ru</u>

⁵⁵⁰ "Russian Navy to receive five bastion missile defense systems in 2015", Sputnik News, 9 September 2015, http://sputniknews.com

⁵⁵¹ Novichkov, Nikolai, "Russia Navy Pacific Fleet deploys Bastion-P to Kuril Islands," IHS Jane's 360, 4 August 2016, http://www.janes.com

⁵⁵² Novichkov, Nikolai, "Russia Navy Pacific Fleet deploys Bastion-P to Kuril Islands," IHS Jane's 360, 4 August 2016, http://www.janes.com

⁵⁵³ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁵⁴ "Russia to station military unit in Arctic by 2018," The Associated Press, 22 October 2015, http://www.armytimes.com

45th Air Force and Air Defense Army of the Northern Fleet

Formed in December 2015, reported by Russian Defense Minister Sergey Shoigu.⁵⁵⁵

80th Independent Rifle Brigade⁵⁵⁶

The Barents Observer reports that, "the unit in Alakurtti was <u>established in January</u> 2015 as part of Russia's increased Arctic ambitions".

200th Independent Motor Rifle Brigade⁵⁵⁷

• Became part of the Northern Fleet's ground forces in December 2012 and is based in Pechenga.

Arctic Brigade

- In 2011 Russia announced the establishment of an Arctic Brigade at Pechenga, about 10 kilometers from the Russian-Norwegian border and 50 kilometers from the Norwegian town of Kirkenes. "This brigade will be specially equipped for military warfare in Arctic conditions. It will be set up with DT-30P Vityaz tracked vehicles, in addition to multi-service army equipment, other armored vehicles and tanks." The *Barents Observer* reported that the *Nezavisimaya Gazeta* commented that "the U.S. and Canada are already establishing similar brigades, and the new Russian Polar Brigade will be located close to the border of Norway and Finland 'to balance the situation'."⁵⁵⁸
- The Pechenga motorized infantry brigade "would be re-organized to become an Arctic brigade specially equipped for military warfare in Arctic conditions." It was anticipated that it would be operational by 2015, and later it was announced that the brigade would become part of the Northern Fleet.⁵⁵⁹
- "According to the Russian Minister of Defence, Anatoly Serdyukov, plans for two Arctic brigades, including their size, armament and location, were still being worked out in July 2011."⁵⁶⁰
- "Russian military has begun to assemble two Army brigades and Special Forces units that will specialize in Arctic warfare and guard oil and gas infrastructure and Russian interests in the region."⁵⁶¹
- In 2012 the Brigade became part of the Northern Fleet.⁵⁶²
- In 2013 the *Barents Observer* reported on equipment testing by the Brigade at Pechenga: "The brigade in Pechenga is now being used as a testing field for new snow and swamp-going vehicles GAZ-3351, TTM-3P and DT-3P, the Ministry of Defense's web site reads.

"GAZ-3351 is a two-tiered belted vehicle capable of driving in snow and swamp. It can carry 16 persons or 2500 kilos of cargo. TTM-3P is a light amphibious personnel vehicle.

"DT-3P is an amphibious armored vehicle capable of going "where there are no roads, only directions", as Rossiskaya Gazeta puts it. It can run for 700 kilometers without stopping and reach a speed of 60 kilometers per hour."⁵⁶³

The Russian Arctic Brigade was formally established in early 2015, says the *Barents Observer*. "The brigade is based partly on the 80th Independent Motor Rifle Brigade in Alakurtti and the 200th Independent Motor Rifle Brigade in Pechenga, both of them located near the borders to Norway and Finland." ⁵⁶⁴

Arctic Joint Strategic Command

- Established on December, 1st, 2014.
- The Northern Fleet is the mainstay of the new strategic formation.
- Area of responsibility includes Russian territories in the Arctic.⁵⁶⁵
- It is comprised of Russian ground, naval, and air forces, and its headquarters are located in Arkhangelsk. 566

⁵⁵⁵Petterson, Trude, "Northern Fleet gets own air force, air defence forces," The Barents Observer, 1 February 2016, <u>http://www.thebarentsobserver.com</u> ⁵⁵⁶Pettersen, Trude, "Northern Fleet plans large Arctic exercise in 2015," The Barents Observer, 3 June 2015, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵⁵⁷ Pettersen, Trude, "Northern Fleet plans large Arctic exercise in 2015," The Barents Observer, 3 June 2015, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵⁵⁸ Pettersen, Trude, "Russia to establish Polar Spetsnaz on border to Norway," The Barents Observer, 16 March 2011, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵⁵⁹ Pettersen, Trude, "Testing equipment for Arctic Brigade," The Barents Observer, 19 March 2013, http://barentsobserver.com

⁵⁶⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, March 2012, p. 9.

⁵⁶¹Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, p. 32, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

⁵⁶² Pettersen, Trude, "Motorized infantry brigade to Northern Fleet," The Barents Observer, 26 November 2012, http://barentsobserver.com

⁵⁶³ Pettersen, Trude, "Testing equipment for Arctic Brigade," The Barents Observer, 19 March 2013, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁵⁶⁴ Staalesen, Atle, "Arctic Brigade on snow," The Barents Observer, 22 February 2016, http://thebarentsobserver.com

⁵⁶⁵ Petterson, Trude, "Northern Fleet gets own air force, air defence forces," The Barents Observer, 1 February 2016, <u>http://www.thebarentsobserver.com</u> ⁵⁶⁶ Korpela, Aleksi, "Of fire and ice: Russia's militarization of the Arctic," The Nato Association of Canada, 4 February 2016, <u>http://natoassociation.ca</u>

Forward Arctic Military Command 2017

 With the aim to defend national interests in the Arctic, Russia "will establish a military command structure with two brigades of mechanized infantry supported by snowmobiles and hovercraft by 2017..." According to Colonel General Oleg Salyukov, "The new specially trained and outfitted military brigades will patrol Russia's Arctic coastline, protect current and future military installations along the shore and in the Russian Arctic, ensure free passage of the Northern Sea Route and — perhaps most important of all — demonstrate to other Arctic nations Russia's military presence in the increasingly contested region..."⁵⁶⁷

New Arctic air division established in 2018

• New Arctic air division will be established in 2018, to cover the territory from Novaya Zemlya to Chukotka which will help protect against attack from the North Pole.⁵⁶⁸

Russian Coast Guard division to be deployed in Chukotka region 2018⁵⁶⁹

- Will be equipped with all-terrain vehicles to patrol the coast.
- Will fulfill "a number of tasks aimed at patrolling the Chukotka's coast and defending from possible enemy's troops landed in the northeastern Russia's region".
- A revival of a motorized rifle division deployed in Chukotka in the 1980s that was disbanded after collapse of the Soviet Union.

Russian Emergencies Ministry in the Arctic⁵⁷⁰

- Facilities in Vorkuta, Murmansk, Naryan-Mar, Arkhangelsk and Dudinka, as well as an Arctic SAR training center Vytegra in the Vologda Region
- Adding paratroopers to its Arctic group in 2017

2. Recurring Operations and Exercises

Testing of Ballistic Missiles

- October 2016 testing of 3 ballistic missiles: Russia launched 3 ballistic missiles in October 2016, 2 of which were off of submarines. "Russia's Ministry of Defense says the first launch took place from the Pacific fleet's nuclear powered submarine Svyatoy Georgiy Pobedonosets. The missile successfully hit its target at Chizha test range on the Kanin Peninsula, one of the most remote areas in the European Russian north. Another missile was launched from the Northern fleet's Delta-IV class submarine Novomoskovsk from a submerged position in the Barents Sea. The missile hit the Kura test range in the Far East after a flight across the Arctic."
- November 2014 Nuclear Triad Test: Russia carried out a nuclear triad test including strategic bombers, strategic submarines, and the launch of a Topol-M ballistic missile. Four Tu-95 strategic bombers, accompanied by four II-78 tankers, were approaching Norway from the Northeast. A few days later another group of four strategic bombers and four tanker aircrafts were flying south along Norway's northern coast. "After scrambling fighter jets from Norway and Great Britain, NATO said in a statement that the Russian bombers pose a risk to civilian air traffic," especially since the bomber and tanker aircrafts from Russia did not "maintain radio contact with civilian air traffic control authorities." Russia also tested its submarine based ballistic missiles (SLBMO) "when 'Yury Dolgoruky' launched a Bulava missile from submerged position in the Barents Sea." This was the first operational test launch of Bulava in relation to combat training as well as the first time a Borey-class submarine carried a full set of missiles on board.⁵⁷²

- ⁵⁶⁹ "Russian division in Chukotka will be equipped with all-terrain vehicles," Sputnik News, 26 August 2016, http://sputniknews.com
- 570 "Emergencies Ministry to add paratroopers to the Arctic group in 2017," The Arctic, 10 March 2017, http://arctic.ru
- ⁵⁷¹ "Russia tests ballistic missiles in Arctic," Maritime executive, 12 October 2016, <u>http://www.maritime-executive.com</u>

⁵⁷² Nilsen, Thomas, "Russia plays nuclear war-games in Barents Region," The Barents Observer, 1 November 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

 ⁵⁶⁷ The Moscow Times (1 October 2014), "Russia to Form Arctic Military Command by 2017," <u>http://www.themoscowtimes.com</u>
 ⁵⁶⁸ Staaleson, Atle, "Russia builds Arctic air defense shield," The Independent Barents Observer, 20 February 2017, https://thebarentsobserver.com/en/security/2017/02/russia-builds-arctic-missile-shield

Airborne Military Drills 2014

"The Russian Airborne Troops on Thursday para-dropped a 350-strong battalion at a landing site on the New Siberian Islands in the Arctic as part of ongoing military drills." The drills included the battalion from the 98th Guards Airborne Division. "The 98th division started large-scale exercises involving 4,000 troops, 36 military transport aircraft and an unspecified number of combat vehicles on March 11."⁵⁷³

Naval Exercises

- October 2016 Russia's Northern and Pacific fleets conducted first joint drills in the Arctic. This was also the first time all of Russia's Arctic archipelagos were visited in one mission.⁵⁷⁴
- May 2016 "Russia's Northern Fleet launched an exercise in the Barents Sea, involving 10 warships and support vessels, including the flagship of the Russian Navy Project 11442 heavy nuclear-powered missile cruiser Pyotr Velikiy (Peter the Great) and planes and helicopters of the Northern Fleet's Air Force and Air Defense Army, the fleet's press service reported."
 - "The maneuvers are taking place as part of the annual practical training of students of the Russian General Staff Military Academy."⁵⁷⁵



Photo Credit: US Navy, Russian Destroyer Admiral Levchenko http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:RFNS_Admiral_Levchenko_DDG-605.jpg

The Ladoga 2013 Exercise

In March 2013 Russian forces undertook two major air force drills in its northwest region. The Ladoga 2013 Exercise took place below the Arctic Circle at Lake Ladoga near the border with Finland. The exercise involved about 2,000 personnel, 500 weapons systems, and 50 front-line aircraft.⁵⁷⁶ Aircraft used in the exercise were to include "MiG-31 Foxhound and Su-27 Flanker fighters, MiG-25RB Foxbat interceptors, Su-24M Fencer attack aircraft, Su24MR reconnaissance aircraft and Mi-8 Hip multirole helicopters and Mi-24 Hind attack helicopters."⁵⁷⁷

- The Russian Defence Minister visited Finland in May 2013 to promote greater military cooperation between the two countries and to urge Finland to buy Russian military equipment, including jet fighters.⁵⁷⁸
- Additional tactical drills took place in the Karelia⁵⁷⁹ region involving 1,000 personnel and 70 aircraft in exercises in mid-air refuelling, reconnaissance, air protection.⁵⁸⁰

In April 2013 the newspaper *Svenska Dagblat* reported on Russian Air Force maneuvers in the Baltic focused on simulated actions against Sweden's two most important military bases.⁵⁸¹

- Russia notified Sweden in advance of the March 2013 simulation of air attacks on Sweden.⁵⁸²
- It was a routine training exercise that took place entirely in international air space, but with flights routed between the Swedish Baltic Sea Islands of Oland and Gotland, ⁵⁸³
- when Sweden was not able to respond, NATO scrambled fighter aircraft out of Lithuania, though also not in time to monitor the Russian exercise.⁵⁸⁴

⁵⁷³ "Russia Paradrops Airborne Battalion in Arctic," Sputnik News, 14 March 2014, <u>http://en.ria.ru</u>

⁵⁷⁴ Staalesen, Atle, "Northern and Pacific fleets conduct first joint drills in Arctic," The Barents Observer, 10 October 2016, <u>http://www.thebarentsobserver.com</u> ⁵⁷⁵ "Russian missile cruiser joins Northern Fleet drills in Barents Sea," TASS, 27 May 2016, http://tass.ru

⁵⁷⁶ "Russian Air Force conducts air defence exercises," Airforce-Technology.Com, 22 March 2013. <u>http://www.airforce-technology.com</u>

⁵⁷⁷ "Russian Air Force Readies for Massive Drills," RiaNovost, 19 March 2013. <u>http://en.rian.ru/military_news/20130319/180118617.html</u>

⁵⁷⁸ Staalsen, Atle, "Arctic on Russian-Finnish military agenda," The Barents Observer, 29 May 2013, http://barentsobserver.com

⁵⁷⁹ Pettersen, Trude, "Russia starts air force drills in Karelia," The Barents Observer, 20 March 2013, http://barentsobserver.com

⁵⁸⁰ "Russian Air Force conducts air defence exercises," Airforce-Technology.Com, 22 March 2013. <u>http://www.airforce-technology.com</u>

⁵⁸¹ "Russians practiced attack on Sweden, but no Swedish response" Radio Sweden, 22 April 2013, <u>http://sverigesradio.se</u>

⁵⁸² O'Dwyer, Gerard, "NATO Rejects Direct Arctic Presence," Deference News, 29 May 2013, http://www.defensenews.com

⁵⁸³ Bennett, Mia, "Why NATO isn't establishing an Arctic presence," AlaskaDispatch, 6 June 2013, http://www.alaskadispatch.com

⁵⁸⁴ "Swedish Air Force fails to counter mock Russian attack," AlaskaDispatch, 22 April 2013, <u>http://www.alaskadispatch.com</u>

 the Swedish Foreign Minister downplayed the incident, saying Russia's security threats are not in Sweden and that "the Russian military has neither the will nor the capacity to attack Swedish territory"⁵⁸⁵

Expedition: High North Geophysical Surveys

Nuclear icebreakers "nuclear icebreakers 'Akademik Fedorov' and 'Yamal' have conducted an entire complex of
geophysical research at the North Pole.... The main purpose of the expedition is assessment of the hydrocarbon
potential of the Russian shelf outside the 200-mile zone. Also, the objective remains to collect data to establish
the continental nature of the Mendeleev and Lomonosov Ridges, which will form the basis of Russia's claims to
the UN Commission about the borders of the continental shelf."⁵⁸⁶

Forward Arctic Expedition 2015

December 2014: According to the Russian Defense Minister, a major Arctic expedition is planned for 2015. The
expedition will target Russia's island formations, including Wrangel Island, Kotelny Island on the New Siberian
Islands, Sredny Island, Novaya Zemlya, Franz Josef Land and Schmidt Cape. Members of the Public Council under
the defense agency as well as cultural personalities will participate.⁵⁸⁷

Forward Expeditions: Russian Navy

 A number of expeditions are planned by the Russian Navy to the Arctic, exploring the region and Russia's place in it. According to Northern Fleet Admiral Andrei Korablev, ships will be sent to Franz Josef Land, Severnaya Zemlya, the Novosibirsk Islands archipelago and Wrangel Island. Russia also plans "to install military infrastructure on almost all of the islands and archipelagos of the Arctic Ocean to create a unified system of monitoring air, surface and subsurface conditions, Korablev said, RIA Novosti reported".⁵⁸⁸

2017 expedition to Kotelny Island⁵⁸⁹

- The expedition from mainland Russia to Kotelny Island aims to test new military equipment and weapons in Arctic conditions. The total distance covered came to 1,140 kilometers.
- "Members of the Defense Ministry expedition were the first in the world to cross from the mainland to Kotelny on board vehicles," said Deputy Defense Minister Dmitry Bulgakov in March 2017.

⁵⁸⁵ O'Dwyer, Gerard, "NATO Rejects Direct Arctic Presence," Defence News, 29 May 2013, <u>http://www.defensenews.com</u>

⁵⁸⁶ Backwell, George, "Russia Conducts High North Geophysical Surveys," MarineLink, 20 August 2014, http://www.marinelink.com

⁵⁸⁷ "Russia Defense Ministry plans to send major expedition to Arctic in 2015," TASS, 24 December 2014, <u>http://itar-tass.com</u>

⁵⁸⁸ Bodner, Matthew, "Russian Navy is Planning Summer Expeditions to Contested Arctic Region," The Moscow Times, 21 May 2014, <u>http://www.themoscowtimes.com</u>

⁵⁸⁹ "Russians First in the World to Reach Island in Arctic on Military Equipment," Sputnik News, 12 March 2017, https://sputniknews.com

NORWAY

1. Security Assets available for Operations in the North

1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc)

- Norwegian Armed Forces headquarters now in Reitan, near Bodo, just north of the Arctic Circle. 590
- In August 2009, Norway became the first Arctic state to headquarter its operations in the High Arctic when it moved its centre of military operations from Jatta in Southern Norway approximately 1,000 miles North to Reitan, outside Bodo. Bodo is also home to Norway's main air force base. Norway has 13 military bases above the Arctic Circle. ⁵⁹¹ Army headquarters are even further north, in Bardufoss.⁵⁹²
- While Navy headquarters are south, in Bergen, Coast Guard headquarters moved to the north, in Sortland, in 2010.⁵⁹³
- "Norway's Defence Minister Ine Søreide Eriksen, in her long-term plan for the Armed Forces, suggested in January 2016 that Norway close nine military bases all over the country, 2 of which are above the Arctic Circle (Harstad and Andoya).
 "The final proposals for a long-term plan will be delivered to the Norwegian Parliament in the beginning of June," news source Dagens Næringsliv reports.⁵⁹⁴

Bodo⁵⁹⁵

- National Joint Headquarters
- Norway's largest military airport
- Fighter aircraft at 24/7 readiness for NATO

Harstad⁵⁹⁶

- Hosts the Navy's Task Force
- Allied Training Centre North

Evenes (ved Harstad)

Army garrison

Bjerkvik⁵⁹⁷

- Technical workshop
- Maintenance on Armed Forces Vehicles and Weapons

Sortland⁵⁹⁸

• Navy's Coast Guard Squadron

Andoya/Andenes⁵⁹⁹

- Andoya Air Station
- The only base for the P-3 Orion maritime patrol aircraft
- Approximately 300 people work here every day in the department 133 Air Wing

⁵⁹⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁹¹ "Norwegian Military Bases," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁵⁹² Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁹³ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁵⁹⁴ Pettersen, Trude, "Norwegian military faces major cuts," The Barents Observer, 21 April 2016, http://www.rcinet.ca

⁵⁹⁵ "Norwegian Military Bases: Bodo," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁵⁹⁶ "Norwegian Military Bases: Harstad," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁵⁹⁷ "Norwegian Military Bases: Bjerkvik," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, http://mil.no

⁵⁹⁸ "Norwegian Military Bases: Sortland," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁵⁹⁹ "Norwegian Military Bases: Andoya/Andenes," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

Setermoen⁶⁰⁰

- Armoured battalion
- Artillery battalion
- Medical battalion
- Intelligence battalion
- Training centre

Skjold⁶⁰¹

- Army 2nd battalion
- Army Engineer battalion

Bardufoss⁶⁰²

- 139 Air Wing stationed at air field
- Norway's main helicopter base since 2012

Sorreisa⁶⁰³

- Surveillance of north Norway air space, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year
- Includes localising and identifying all air activity over and close to national airspace and NATO territory

Banak

- Air field, operated by Royal Norwegian Air Force
- Serves detachment of the 330 Squadron
- Search and rescue helicopter squadron (linked to Porsanger)

Porsanger⁶⁰⁴

- Porsanger "hunter squadron"
- "World's northernmost army department"

Sor-Varanger/Kirkenes⁶⁰⁵

- Guards the 196 km border with Russia
- Employs boats, snowmobiles, skies, and foot patrols
- Parliament member Frank Bakke-Jensen, representing the Conservative Party in Norway's coalition government, announced in June 2016 that Norway will place a new Ranger Company with the Garrison of Sør-Varanger
 - Annual budget of about 180 million kroner is expected to increase with 50 million kroner when the new Ranger Company becomes operative⁶⁰⁶

Possible re-opening of Olavsvern⁶⁰⁷

- A study group that has looked into the new challenges arising from Russia's growing submarine presence in the Arctic has presented the suggestion to re-open Olavsvern base.
 - "The former Royal Norwegian Navy base at Olavsvern is ideal for supporting submarine operations in the extreme North Atlantic and Arctic Seas," reads the recommendation made in July 2016.
- State Secretary Øistein Bø disapproves any current possibilities to reopen Olavsvern.

⁶⁰¹ "Norwegian Military Bases: Skjold," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

http://thebarentsobserver.com

⁶⁰⁰ "Norwegian Military Bases: Setermoen," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁰² "Norwegian Military Bases: Bardufoss," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁰³ "Norwegian Military Bases: Sorreisa," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁰⁴ "Norwegian Military Bases: Porsanger," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁰⁵ "Norwegian Military Bases: Sor-Varanger/Kirkenes," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁰⁶ Nilsen, Thomas, "Norway creates new Army unit on border to Russia," The Barents Observer, 17 June 2016, <u>http://thebarentsobserver.com</u> ⁶⁰⁷ Nilsen. Thomas, "Report encourages Norway to reopen Olavsvern submarine support base," The Barents Observer, 28 July 2016,

1.2 Equipment

1.2.1 Air⁶⁰⁸

F-16 Fighters

- Approximately 60 in operation⁶⁰⁹
- Based at Bodo, on 24/7 alert⁶¹⁰
- Without tankers for air-to-air refuelling the F-16 (and the coming F-35s) have little capacity beyond Norway's northern air space boundaries.⁶¹¹



Photo Credit: Forsvaret/Lars Magne Hovtun, F-16, <u>http://www.newsinenglish.no/2011/10/27/new-fighter-jets-lack-arctic-abilities/</u>

F-35 Fighters

- Defence chief Adm Haakon Bruun-Hanssen revealed a strategic defence review in October 2015 that committed to full requisition of 52 F-35 joint strike fighters.⁶¹²
- To be based mainly at Ørland Main Air Station in central Norway, but with a Forward Operating base at Evenes in northern Norway.⁶¹³The first of the aircraft were expected to be delivered to Norway in 2017, and Norway plans to have all 52 delivered by 2025.⁶¹⁴
- SIPRI reports that without air refuelling they will have no capability beyond Norwegian airspace⁶¹⁵
- No plans for air-to-air refuelling



Photo Credit: Tom Bech, F-35 http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:F-35_and_Boats.jpg

⁶⁰⁸ "Norwegian Military Bases: Sor-Varanger/Kirkenes," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u> and "The Military Balance 2012," IISS, 7 March 2012, p. 142, <u>https://www.iiss.org</u>

⁶⁰⁹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶¹⁰ "New Fighter Jets Lack Arctic abilities," News in English, 27 October 2011, http://www.newsinenglish.no

⁶¹¹ "New Fighter Jets Lack Arctic abilities," News in English, 27 October 2011, http://www.newsinenglish.no

⁶¹² Stevenson, Beth, "Oil price, weak currency challenge Norwegian F-35 buy", Flightglobal, 21 January 2016, https://www.flightglobal.com

⁶¹³ "F-35 Lightning II Wins Norway's (Fake) Competition," Defense Industry Daily, 17 June 2012, <u>http://www.defenseindustrydaily.com</u>

⁶¹⁴ Nilsen, Thomas, Lockheed Martin unveils Norway's first F-35," The Barents Observer, 22 September 2015, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁶¹⁵ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 7.

P-3C and P-3N Anti-Submarine Warfare and Long-Range Patrol⁶¹⁶(6)

- Peacetime surveillance and intelligence gathering
- Wartime anti-submarine warfare and anti-surface ship warfare
- Orion reconnaissance UAV P-3N can carry a pay load of up to 660 pounds and travel for at least 24 hours.⁶¹⁷
- 26 years old and due for modernizing. According to SIPRI's 2016 Background Paper, these are to be retired between 2017 and 2028 and replaced by "satellite-based sensors, four new surveillance aircraft and six long-range UAVs. The new aircraft and UAVs are to be operational by 2024."



Photo Credit: P-3N Orion from the Royal Norwegian Air Force http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:Bergen Air Show 009.jpg

Boeing CO P-8A

- "Norway plans to order five Boeing Co P-8A Poseidon maritime patrol planes to maintain its surveillance capacity and meet future security challenges, the NATO country's Defence Ministry said."⁶¹⁹
- Ordered in November 2016, "the submarine-hunting patrol planes will replace Norway's current fleet of six P-3
 Orion and three DA-20 Jet Falcon aircraft and are expected to be delivered in 2021 and 2022."⁶²⁰

Falcon 20C electronic warfare (3)

C-130J Herculese Transport (4)

MFI-15 Safari Training



Photo Credit: Tom Strom, Norway Airforce - Saab MFI-15 Safari, http://www.airliners.net/search/photo.search?id=0591096

⁶¹⁶ Smol, Robert (4 April 2014), "The Norwegian juggernaut," National Post, <u>http://www.nationalpost.com/index.html</u>

⁶¹⁷ "Warriors of Steel: Meet Russia's robot army," Sputnik News, 29 May 2016, sputniknews.com

⁶¹⁸ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶¹⁹ Dagenborg, Joachim, "Norway plans \$1.15 billion order for five Boeing Poseidon military aircraft," Reuters, 28 November 2016, www.reuters.com

⁶²⁰ "Norway in \$A1.54b military aircraft order," Gold Coast Bulletin, 28 November 2016, http://www.goldcoastbulletin.com.au/

Lynx MK86 Anti-Submarine Warfare Helicopters (6)

Bell-412SP Helicopters (18)

Sea King Search and Rescue Helicopters (12)

NASAMS II

Land-Based Surface to Air Anti-Aircraft System

1.2.2 Land

Army⁶²¹

CV9030 Tank

Leopard 2A4 Heavy Tank

Archer Self-Propelled Artillery

M-113 Family of Light Tanks

BV 206 Tracked Vehicle

1.2.3 Sea

Frigates or destroyers⁶²² (last of which was delivered in Jan 2011)⁶²³

- Five new Frigates or destroyers
- Fridjof Nansen class
- New Arctic capability
- Have the US Aegis combat system
- Will host NH90 helicopters⁶²⁴

Coastal Patrol Vessels

- Six coastal patrol vessels
- Skjold class
- 76mm gun, anti-ship and anti-air missiles
- IISS refers to these as Patrol and Coastal Combatants
- As of September 2016 Norway's Coast Guard has ordered new patrol vessels to be built three at a time and costing €221 million each.^{625 626}

http://thebarentsobserver.com 626 See "Coast Guard" section for more details.

^{621 &}quot;About," Norwegian Armed Forces, date not listed, http://mil.no

⁶²² The Military Balance 2012 counts them as destroyers.

⁶²³ Norway's navy ships are not capable of breaking ice, but some have increased capacity for Arctic operations, notably newly-acquired Fridtjof Nansen class frigates.

⁶²⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012, p. 8.

⁶²⁵ Nilsen, Thomas, "Vanishing sea ice gives Norway more waters to patrol, orders new Coast Guard vessels," The Barents Observer, 29 September 2016,

Marjata IV, Intelligence Vessel

A new Norwegian military intelligence vessel, the "Marjata," the same name that was given to all three earlier vessels in this role over a 60-year period, entered into service in April 2016⁶²⁷. The Marjata IV will be substantially larger than the others, being 126 meters (413 feet) long and 23.5 meters (77 feet) wide, and will have costed Norwegian military approximately \$170 million.⁶²⁸ Norway will keep the Marjata IV's predecessors in service, doubling Norway's capability, and *IHS Jane's 360* reports that this vessel "has already deployed to take up surveillance and reconnaissance duties, alongside other NATO vessels, in and around the Arctic region".⁶²⁹



Photocredit: Atle Staalesen/The Independent Barents Observer, Mariata IV at port in Kirkenes, http://www.rcinet.ca

Submarines

- Six Ula class (SIPRI) to be replaced starting in mid-2020⁶³⁰
 - Minister of Defence, Ine Eriksen Søreide, has announced a "Norwegian-German strategic partnership for purchase and lifetime management for four new submarines."⁶³¹
 - "The plan is to sign a common contract for new submarines in 2019. This will enable delivery of new submarines from the mid-2020s to 2030."
- Six mine-clearance vessels
- Three minesweepers
- Three mine-hunting
- One of these usually with NATO's mine-clearance force
- Logistics vessel
 - 14 vessels: diving, training, survey, intelligence, oceanographic surveillance, supply, and Royal yacht⁶³³
 - Planning a large logistic support ship to be commissioned in 2017 (HNoMS Maud)⁶³⁴
- "...operates a large 'research ship' with electronic and signals intelligence equipment, which is capable of
 operations in thin ice. A replacement was ordered in 2010."⁶³⁵
- "None of Norway's warships or patrol ships can break ice."⁶³⁶

Combat support ship⁶³⁷

• "A large combat support ship, the first ever for Norway, was ordered in 2013 and is to be delivered in 2016. It will give the [Nansen] frigates a substantial increase in range and endurance."

⁶²⁷ Nilsen, Thomas, "Norway's new Arctic giant spyship," The Barents Observer, 17 March 2014, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

⁶²⁸ "Vikings Striking: Norway to Double its Warships to Track Russian Fleet", Sputnik News, 4 April 2016, http://sputniknews.com

⁶²⁹ Jones, Bruce, "Norway's new surveillance ship arrives, deploys quickly to support NATO operations," IHS Janes 360, 22 April 2016, http://www.janes.com ⁶³⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶³¹ Nilsen, Thomas, "Norway teams up with Germany for new submarines," 3 February 2017, The Barents Observer, <u>https://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

⁶³² Nilsen, Thomas, "Norway teams up with Germany for new submarines," 3 February 2017, The Barents Observer, <u>https://thebarentsobserver.com</u>

⁶³³ "The Military Balance 2012," IISS, 7 March 2012, p. 142., <u>https://www.iiss.org</u>

⁶³⁴ "A COMPARISON OF HMCS QUEENSTON AND HNoMS MAUD," Canadian Defence Matters, April 7, 2017, http://jgmjgm516.blogspot.ca/2017/04/thequeenston-class-is-class-of-naval.html

⁶³⁵ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012.

⁶³⁶ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012.

⁶³⁷ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

Kronprins Haakons – New oceanographic icebreaker⁶³⁸

- Has launched at Fincantieri's shipyard in Muggiano, La Spezia and is undergoing final outfitting ahead of its expected date of delivery (end of 2017)
- Will be able to accommodate 55 people, cruise at up to 15 knots, break ice up to 1 metre thick, and will be equipped with 2 helicopters in the bow.
- Vessel will be owned by the Norwegian Polar Institute for the Norwegian Government and will be used also by the Institute of Marine Research (IMR), the Norwegian governmental body for oceanographic research and fishing, and by the University of Tromsø.

1.2 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)

The Navy's "coastal squadron" is its operational force, and the Navy's Coast Guard "in peacetime are the government's primary authority at sea and the Armed Force's most important resource for handling incidents in the Norwegian territorial waters."⁶³⁹

Coast Guard

- Ministry of defence says Coast Guard has 13 vessels of various size⁶⁴⁰
 - IISS says Norway's Coast Guard has 14 Patrol and Coastal Combatant ships
 - The ice capable Svalbard Coast Guard vessels (entered into service in 2002)
 - 57mm gun
 - NBC protected
- The "Coastguard operates four large but lightly armed OPVs capable of operations in icy conditions, including three with a helicopter hangar, and four other large ocean-going OPVs."
- The Coast Guard operates ice-capable ships equipped with anti-ship and anti-air weapons.
- "Prime Minister Erna Solberg and Defence Minister Ine Eriksen Søreideproudly announced that Norway will not only order one, but three at a time, new Coast Guard vessels."⁶⁴¹
 - Vessels with have ice-breaking capabilities as well as helicopter and longer sailing range.
 - "Will replace the 30 years old North Cape class today consisting of the vessels "Nordkapp", "Senja" and "Andenes".

Brigade Nord⁶⁴²

- Since 2009, the Brigade Nord is "the largest active unit of the Norwegian Army. The Brigade is stationed in the north of Norway, above the Arctic Circle, though one of its two heavy battalions is stationed near Oslo. It is winter-trained but is organized as a heavy mechanized unit and is equipped for operations in Norway.
- Currently its tanks and armored vehicles are being modernized and there are plans to both modernize and expand the brigade's air defence.
- Norway's 2015 strategic defence review noted plans to base part of the brigade at Porsanermoen Camp.

Home Guard-17 District⁶⁴³

- Located in Finnmark
- According to Norway's 2015 Strategic Defence Review, the Norwegian Home Guard-17 District will be "reinforced to safeguard territorial responsibility and receive reinforcements. The district will also be given capacity for anti-tank and electronic warfare. Rapid response units will be reinforced from 3 000 to 3 250 and will be able to mobilise rapidly to other parts of the country."

⁶³⁸ Haun, Eric, "Norway's New Oceanographic Icebreaker Launched," Marine Link, 28 February, 2017, <u>http://www.marinelink.com/news/oceanographic-</u> icebreaker422636

⁶³⁹ "About," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁴⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic," SIPRI Background Paper, March 2012.

⁶⁴¹ "Norway orders new Coast Guard vessels as vanishing sea ice increases areas needing patrol," RCINet, 30 September 2016, www.rcinet.ca

⁶⁴² Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶⁴³ Admiral Haakon Bruun-Hanssen, "Norwegian Armed Forces in Transition," Norwegian Armed Forces, 2015. https://forsvaret.no/en/ForsvaretDocuments/Strategic Defence Review 2015 abridged.pdf

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017

MARPART project⁶⁴⁴

- Maritime Preparedness and International Partnership in the High North (MARPART project)
- Financed by the Norwegian Ministry of Foreign Affairs, with participation from approximately 20 organizations from Norway, Russia, Iceland and Greenland
- "MARPART emphasizes the responsibility of the governments for preparedness as to safety, security and environmental protection in the High North. The main purpose of this project is to assess the risk of the increased maritime activity in the High North and the challenges this increase may represent for the preparedness institutions in this region."

2. Recurring Operations and Exercises

Military Exercises⁶⁴⁵

Annual military exercises in cooperation with NATO and regional partners like Sweden are designed to enhance capacity for large-scale operations in winter conditions.

Cold Response

- Norwegian run with significant NATO and regional participation
- 7-10,000 troops
- Annual, mid-March
- Training for large-scale operations in winter conditions
- Last occurred in March 2016

Dynamic Mongoose⁶⁴⁶

- Largest annual anti-submarine warfare exercise
- Last occurred in May 2015
 - More than a dozen surface vessels and four submarines participated

Arctic Challenge (ACE)

- Norwegian-run biennial exercise with significant NATO participation, including "forces from Germany, Britain, France, the Netherlands and the United States, as well as non-Nato allies Finland, Sweden and Switzerland." ⁶⁴⁷
- "Largest of its kind" aviation exercise, with approx. 100 aircraft and 4,000 servicemen taking part⁶⁴⁸
- Biennial, held in May⁶⁴⁹
- Last occurred May 22 June 2, 2017, organized by Norway, Sweden and Finland with over 11 countries participating.⁶⁵⁰

Joint Viking⁶⁵¹

- A national Norwegian exercise that, in 2017, included approximately 700 soldiers from the United States Marine Corps, United States Army and the British Royal Marines and took place in Finnmark.
- Main goals are to practice crisis management and the defense of northern Norway.

⁶⁴⁴ "Maritime Preparedness and International Partnership in the High North (MARPART project)," The University of the Arctic, 20 May 2016, <u>http://www.uarctic.org</u>

⁶⁴⁵ "Cold Response 2012," Norwegian Armed Forces, no date listed, <u>http://mil.no</u>

⁶⁴⁶ "Anti-submarine warfare exercise 'Dynamic Mongoose' starts off Norwegian coast," NATO, 4 May 2015, http://www.nato.int

⁶⁴⁷ Oliphant, Roland, "Russia and NATO launch rival war games," The Telegraph, 26 May 2015, http://www.telegraph.co.uk

⁶⁴⁸ Oliphant, Roland, "Russia and NATO launch rival war games," The Telegraph, 26 May 2015, http://www.telegraph.co.uk

⁶⁴⁹ "Sweden, Norway and Finland will participate in Europe's largest fighter jet drills, dubbed the Arctic Challenge Exercise 2015 (ACE 2015)," Sputnik News, 25 May 2015, http://sputniknews.com

⁶⁵⁰ Nilsen, Thomas, "Arctic Challenge 2017 set for take off," The Barents Observer, 16 May 2017, https://thebarentsobserver.com

⁶⁵¹ Nilsen, Thomas, "Norway kicks of exercise in Finnmark," The Barents Observer, 3 March 2017, https://thebarentsobserver.com

DENMARK

1. Security Assets available for Operations in the North

In June 2016, Denmark announced a proposed increase in defense spending in the Arctic. The released budget reflected a modest increase in spending – \$18 million added to a budget of \$3 billion. Monies will enable Denmark to increase surveillance as well as boost their coast guard capacity to honour its commitment as an Arctic Council member.⁶⁵²

1.1 Bases (including stations, naval facilities, radar sites, etc.)

Greenland and Faroes Military Bases

- A combined command, headquartered in Nuuk, Greenland⁶⁵³
 - Headquarters has about 85 personnel & coordinates Danish military unit deployments across the Arctic and North Atlantic
- Surveillance and sovereignty
- Fisheries inspection
- Search and rescue
- Support for scientific expeditions

Gronnedal in Southwest Greenland

- Detachments:
 - Northeast Greenland National Park Station Nord (Northern Greenland) Luftgruppe Vest I Sondre Stromford/Kangerlussuaq (Western Greenland) Forsvarets Vagt I Mestersvig (Eastern Greeland)

Thule Air Base (North-Western Greenland)

• Currently dormant⁶⁵⁴

Island Command Faroes

Near Torshavn⁶⁵⁵

1.2 Equipment

1.2.1 Air

F-16 Fighter (45)



Photo Credit: RDAF F-16 MLU http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:F-16 MLU of Royal Danish Air Force (reg. ET-199), static display, Radom AirShow 2005, Poland.jpg

- F-16s have used Kangerlussuaq (Sonder Stromfjord) airport in west Greenland, with some to be based there for short periods
- Thule Air Base, now dormant, could be used again
- 27 F-35A combat aircraft were selected in 2016 to replace the 30 currently operational F-16s after 2020. 656

⁶⁵⁶ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶⁵² McGwin, Kevin, "Keeping the Peace: Neither armed nor dangerous," The Arctic Journal, 27 June 2016, http://arcticjournal.com

⁶⁵³ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶⁵⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶⁵⁵ "Tasks in the Arctic and the Northern Alliance," Forsvarsministereit Ministry of Defence, 27 March 2015, <u>http://www.fmn.dk</u>

C-130J Herculese Transport (4)

CL-604 Challenger Passenger Transport (3)



Photo Credit: Danish Air Show, http://danishairshow.dk/en/aircrafts/aircraft/danske-flyvevaben

Saab T-17 Supporter Training (27)



Photo Credit: Picture of Saab MFI-17 Supporter, Radom Air Show 2007, http://commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:MFI-17 Supporter, Radom Air Show 2007.jpg

Super Lynx (MK90B) Anti-Submarine Warfare Helicopters (8)

AS550 Fennec Maritime Reconnaissance Helicopters (8)

EH101 Merlin Transport Helicopters (14)

Surveillance Nanosatellite Ulloriaq⁶⁵⁷

• The Danish Defence Acquisition and Logistics Organization (DALO), the Technical University of Denmark (DTU) and GomSpace signed an agreement on June 10 to develop and deploy a nanosatellite as part of a surveillance demonstration for the Artic. The satellite, measuring 30x20x10 cm, is expected to launch by the end of 2017.

1.2.2 Land

Not available

1.2.3 Sea

Destroyer (1)

2 more on order⁶⁵⁸

Thetis class (300 ton) Multi-Role OPV/Frigates (4)⁶⁵⁹

- Commissioned in the early 1990s, designed for patrols in the North Atlantic and off Greenland, capable of breaking ice up to 1 metre thick
- Larger MH-60R helicopters are replacing the Lynx helicopters used on Thetis class frigates

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁶⁵⁷ "Gomspace ApS: Nanosatellite from GomSpace for Surveillance Demonstration for the Artic," BusinessWire, 10 June 2016, <u>http://www.businesswire.com</u>

⁶⁵⁸ "The Military Balance 2012," IISS, 7 March 2012, <u>https://www.iiss.org</u>

⁶⁵⁹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016

Ice-Capable Patrol Vessels (5)

- 2 Abasalon- and 3 Iver Huitfeldt-class
- 2 Absalon vessels are the largest ever built by the Royal Danish Navy and are considered both command and support ships⁶⁶⁰
- Can travel through ice up to a meter thick, equipped with 76mm guns, and cold add Harpoon and Sea Sparrow anti-air and anti-ship missiles and anti-submarine torpedos. For patrols in North Atlantic and off Greenland.

Patrol and coastal combatant ships DIANA Class (6)⁶⁶²Arctic Patrol Ships Knud Rasmussen class (2)

- Dedicated for patrols off Greenland
- "A third Rasmussen OPV was ordered in late 2013 and is to enter service in 2017 or 2018."⁶⁶³

Ice-strengthened AGDLEK class large patrol craft (1)⁶⁶⁴

- Only, HDMS Tulugaq, remains active, operates from Greenland
- Being replaced by larger Knud Rasmussen class patrol ships

Mine warfare and mine countermeasures (7)

Logistics and support (22)

- Ministry of Defence says of North Atlantic:
 - Two types of ships operate in the North Atlantic
 - Large THETIS-class patrol vessels
 - new KNUD RASMUSSEN-class inspection vessels
 - These ships are based at Naval Base Frederikshavn
 - Under operational control of Island Commander Faroe Islands and Island Commander Greenland

1.3 Organizations and Operational Units (personnel)

The Arctic Command⁶⁶⁶

- "The Arctic Command was established on 31st October 2012, when the Island Command Greenland and the Island Command Faroes were united into a joint Arctic Command."
- Headquarters is in the Greenland capital of Nuuk. Also has a minor liaison element in Tórshavn in the Faroe Islands.
- The primary tasks of the Defence are maritime surveillance and enforcement of sovereignty.
- The Defense has initiated the acquisition of a KNUD RASMUSSEN class vessel, and nine ship-based SEAHAWK helicopters to replace the aging LYNX helicopters.

Fromandskorps (Frogman Corps)

- Navy SEAL- like unit made up of armed divers⁶⁶⁷
- Special forces unit based in Greenland⁶⁶⁸
- Can operate in Arctic and expanding from 130 150 troops⁶⁶⁹

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017

Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁶⁶⁰ "Absalon L16," MilitaryFactory.com, last modified in 2016, <u>http://www.militaryfactory.com</u>

⁶⁶¹ Huebert, Rob; Exner-Pirot, Heather; Lajeunesse, Adam; Gulledge, Jay, "Climate Change and International Security: The Arctic as a Bellwether," Center for Climate and Energy Solutions, May 2012, p. 18, <u>http://www.c2es.org/docUploads/arctic-security-report.pdf</u>

⁶⁶² "Facts and Figures: The Danish Armed Forces," Danish Defence, 2011, <u>http://forsvaret.dk</u>

⁶⁶³ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016

⁶⁶⁴ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016 ⁶⁶⁵ "North Atlantic," Danish Defence, no date listed, <u>http://forsvaret.dk</u>

⁶⁶⁶ "Tasks in the Arctic and North Atlantic," Forsvarsministereit Ministry of Defence, last modified 12, December 2016,

http://www.fmn.dk/eng/allabout/Pages/TasksintheArcticandtheNorthernAtlantic.aspx

^{667 &}quot;Denmark's Arctic Assets and Canada's Response – Sovereignty and Strategic Resources of the High Arctic," CASR, May 2005, http://www.casr.ca

⁶⁶⁸ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

⁶⁶⁹ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016.

Jaeger special forces⁶⁷⁰

- Based in Denmark
- Available for Arctic duties and expanding from 200 300 troops

Small Sledge Patrol (Slaedepatrulje Sirius) in Greenland⁶⁷¹

- The defence ministry says "the Sledge Patrol SIRIUS monitors the uninhabited coastline of approximately 2100 km." Patrol is by dog sleds in the winter and coastal boats in the summer.
- The area also patrolled by aircraft and helicopter.
- Sovereignty patrols, as well as wildlife management (animal census and ringing birds)

2. Recurring Operations and Exercises

Search and Rescue

- In Greenland Sea in 2012
- 1000 personnel from Arctic Nations
- A live full-scale search and rescue exercise
 - Participating countries
 - Canada
 - Denmark
 - Iceland
 - Norway
 - Russia
 - USA⁶⁷²

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁶⁷⁰ Wezeman, Siemon, T., "Military Capabilities in the Arctic: A New Cold War in the High North?," SIPRI Background Paper, SIPRI, October 2016. ⁶⁷¹ "North Atlantic," Danish Defence, no date listed, <u>http://forsvaret.dk</u>

⁶⁷² "Greenland Command/ISCOMGEENLAND: Search and Rescue Exercise Greenland Sea 2012, Final Exercise Report," Island Commander Greenland, 2012, http://www.institutenorth.org/assets/images/uploads/attachments/SAREX_Greenland_Sea_2012_Final_Exercise_Report.pdf

JOINT EXERCISES

The proliferation of joint inter-state military exercises also reflects recognition of Arctic interdependence, but it must also be said that some exercises are still reflective of earlier strategic dynamics and thus not all promote attitudes of harmony and cooperation.

Exercise Amalgam Dart⁶⁷³

"Amalgam Dart is a NORAD training exercise in aerospace detection and defence." Taking place in May and June of 2015, the operation "involved Canadian and American aircraft (fighter aircraft, air-to-air refuelling tankers, and AWACS airborne warning and control aircraft) operating out of Canadian forward operating locations and US air bases in Alaska, as well as a mobile radart system out of Resolute."

Operation Arctic Anvil

A major Pacific joint training effort between US and Canada.⁶⁷⁴

- Arctic Anvil 2016⁶⁷⁵
 - Hosted in Alaska for the first time from July 22 Aug 3 2016
 - Consisted of live-fire and force-on-force training
 - Canadian participation included 100 members from the 1st Battalion, Princess Patricia's Canadian Light Infantry
 - Total participation reached 8, 000 troops

Operation Arctic Chinook

This joint SAR exercise sponsored by both the U.S. Coast Guard and Alaska Command occurred for the first time from 22-25 August, 2016. The exercise, which was open to all Arctic Council nations, took place in Kotzebue, Alaska. Rear Adm. Michael F. McAllister, commander, 17th Coast Guard District reported that, "this is one of the first opportunities we've had to exercise our International Maritime Search and Rescue Agreement forged between the Arctic Council nations". Coast Guard Alaska's official blog described the exercise as the following: "a scenario consisting of an adventure-class cruise ship with approximately 250 passengers and crew that experiences an incident which degrades to become a catastrophic event. The exercise simulated a decision to abandon ship resulting in passengers and crew with a mix of critical, serious and minor injuries, as well as the deployment of life rafts."⁶⁷⁶

Before the exercise began, Alaska Native News reported that the 17th Coast Guard District, Alaska National Guard, State of Alaska agencies, Alaska Native organizations, and Canadian Forces were all to be involved in the exercise.⁶⁷⁷

Communications technology known as the Next Generation Incident Command System (NICS), a web-based system developed by the Department of Homeland Security Science and Technology Directorate in collaboration with Massachusetts Institute of Technology's Lincoln Laboratory and the Coast Guard R&D Center, was tested and evaluated during this exercise. This technology will continue to be helpful for SAR operations in remote locations, like the Arctic, during large-scale maritime incidents.⁶⁷⁸

Arctic Council SAR Table Top Exercise

In October 2011 a two-day exercise in Whitehorse experts from the eight Arctic Council States (involving 32 delegates and 60 observers) "examined the strategic and operational aspects of the Agreement on Cooperation on Aeronautical

⁶⁷³ Regehr, Ernie, "When Bears Still Fly: Responding to Russian Bomber Patrols in the Arctic", The Simons Foundation, 10 November 2016, http://thesimonsfoundation.ca

⁶⁷⁴ Pugliese, David, "Canadian troops headed to Alaska for Exercise Arctic Anvil," Ottawa Citizen, 22 July 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

⁶⁷⁵ Pugliese, David, "Canadian troops headed to Alaska for Exercise Arctic Anvil," Ottawa Citizen, 22 July 2016, http://ottawacitizen.com

⁶⁷⁶ Colclough, Bill, "Arctic Chinook 2016," Coast Guard Alaksa Official Blog, 2 September 2016, http://alaska.coastguard.dodlive.mil/

⁶⁷⁷ Colclough, Bill, "USCG to participate with AK Command in Arctic Chinook Exercises," Alaska Native News, 23 August 2016, <u>http://alaska-native-news.com</u> ⁶⁷⁸ U.S. Coast Guard Research and Development Center, "Coast Guard Research and Development Center Completes Arctic Communications and Next

Generation Incident Command System Evaluation," Defence Media Activity, 2 September 2016, www.dvidshub.net

and Maritime Search and Rescue in the Arctic, signed in Nuuk, Greenland, on May 12, 2011." Aeronautical and maritime SAR scenarios were addressed and delegates agreed that "because of each country's limited SAR resources and large areas of responsibility, an international response is needed."⁶⁷⁹A report by the Munk-Gordon Arctic Security Program and OpenCanada provides graphics and documentation of publicly reported search and rescue operations since 2010 to ask whether Canada is ready to meet its obligations under the Search and Rescue agreement.⁶⁸⁰

Exercise Barents Rescue

Barents Rescue is a biennial cross-boundary emergency exercise for the Barents Euro-Arctic Region and has been held since 2001. The BEAC described Barents Rescue 2011 as including four practical field exercises that included scenarios involving "a train accident, rescue operations of trapped people in a collapsed industrial building and in a tunnel, and a chemical emission in a densely populated area." Emergency actors and organizations from all the Barents Region countries took part, with an implementation of the 2009 Agreement on Emergency Prevention Preparedness and Response among Sweden, Finland, Norway and Russia.⁶⁸¹ Exercise Barents 2014 was carried out successfully⁶⁸², and a photo gallery posted by *The Barents Observer* confirms that the exercise occurred again in 2015, despite its normal routine of occurring every second year.⁶⁸³

- The most recent Barents Rescue exercise began on May 29 2017 and lasted for three days. According to The Arctic Institute's summary, it went off without a hitch.⁶⁸⁴
 - "This year, the Northern Fleet's rescue tug Nikolai Chiker, the new multirole modular speedboat Spasatel Kononenko, as well as search-and-rescue aircraft, will take part..."
 - "Norway will use ships, boats, Coastal Administration and Royal Navy Coast Guard ships, and some patrol aircraft from Royal Norwegian Air Force bases. Norwegian air traffic control centers and agencies in northern coastal cities and other state agencies will also take part."

CTBTO – The Comprehensive Test Ban Treaty Organization

The International Monitoring System of the CTBTO includes seismic, infrasound, and radionuclide monitoring facilities across the Arctic, involving all of the circumpolar states, designed to detect any nuclear weapon test explosion.⁶⁸⁵

Operation Cold Response

Cold Response is a major annual Norwegian-led exercise with significant participation from NATO states. In 2012 the fifth such exercise included operations in Swedish territory as well and involved "more than 16,000 sailors, soldiers, airmen, and Marines representing 15 nations."⁶⁸⁶ The focus of the exercise is "to improve and practise capabilities in high intensity and multi-threat operations during cold weather conditions."⁶⁸⁷ The exercise included a crisis response in the context of a UN Chapter VII mandate. Russia is not included in the exercise, leading critics to note the concern that "old twentieth century divisions are being re-ignited" by the exercise.

Cold Response 2016 included activities ranging from land, to sea, to air. ⁶⁸⁹ As noted in The Barents Observer in March 2016, "this year's Cold Response includes around 15,000 troops from 14 countries, 40 helicopters, 30 fighter jets and 10 other aircrafts, among them three B-52 bombers. On the maritime side, 30 vessels will participate, while 1000 vehicles will be present on land."⁶⁹⁰ A Russian inspection took place again this year, which was expected according to the Norwegian Defence Ministry representative, as Russia has requested inspections at all recent major Norwegian exercises with allied participation.⁶⁹¹

⁶⁸⁵ "Whole World," CBTO, last modified 17 June 2016, <u>http://www.ctbto.org/map/#ims</u>

⁶⁷⁹ "Arctic Council Search and Rescue Table Top Exercise," Foreign Affairs and International Trade Canada, no date listed, <u>http://www.international.gc.ca</u> ⁶⁸⁰ "Are We Ready," OpenCanada.Org, 6 May 2013. <u>http://opencanada.org</u>

⁶⁸¹ "Barents Rescue Exercise: Making the Barents Region a safer place," BarentSaga, no date listed, <u>http://www.beac.st/?DeptID=20413</u>

⁶⁸² "Multifunction MPSV07 salvage vessel "Spasatel Kavdeikin" took part in the international SAR exercise "Barents 2014", Marine Engineering Bureau, 6 September 2016, www.meb.com.ua

⁶⁸³ "Exercise Barents 2015," The Barents Observer, last modified 9 June 2016, http://barentsobserver.com

⁶⁸⁴ Muzik, Val, "The Arctic this Week Take 5: Week of May 29, 2017," The Arctic Institute, 2 June 2017, http://www.thearcticinstitute.org

 ⁶⁸⁶ Lundquist, Edward H., "Exercise Cold Response Participants Get Chilly Reception in Norway," 22 March 2012, <u>http://www.defensemedianetwork.com</u>
 687 "Press Release: Exercise Cold Response 2012," Norwegian Joint Headquarters Public Affairs Office, no date listed,
 <u>http://www.norge.fi/PageFiles/591341/IEPR%20-%20Exercise%20Cold%20Response%202012.pdf</u>

⁶⁸⁸ "NATO Exercise 'Cold Response 2012': A Crisis Response Operation or a Provocation to Russia?" NATO Watch, 3 May 2012, http://www.natowatch.org

^{689 &}quot;CR-16," Danish Defence, no date listed, http://forsvaret.dk

⁶⁹⁰ Staalesen, Atle, "Russian inspectors at Cold Response," The Barents Observer, 3 March 2016, http://thebarentsobserver.com

⁶⁹¹ Staalesen, Atle, "Russian inspectors at Cold Response," The Barents Observer, 3 March 2016, http://thebarentsobserver.com

Operation FRUKUS

Operation FRUKUS is took place in 2013, with four vessels of the Russian Northern Fleet joining French, Norwegian and US navies in exercise linked to Partnership for Peace⁶⁹², but was said to be cancelled in 2014 due to tensions with Russia.

• "The U.S. administration plans to cancel participation in the Northern Eagle and FRUKUS naval exercises as part of political and economic measures against Russia following the recent events in Ukraine."⁶⁹⁴

Forward Joint Navy Exercise: U.S., Russia, and Norway

There were plans for a joint Navy exercise summer 2014, which would include the United States, Russia and Norway.⁶⁹⁵ June 2016: There is no evidence of this occurring.

Forward Rosneft Arctic Projects

Rosneft, Russia's leader in the petroleum industry, produced a report "Russia and Norway: Prospects for Cooperation in the Arctic," published by the Fridtjof Nansen Institute. Artur Chilingarov, a Russian polar explorer and representative of President of the Russian Federation on international cooperation in the Arctic and Anarctic, said that "Russia and Norway provide an example of how disputed issues may be constructively resolved on the sole basis of national and international laws." Natural resources in the Arctic are a sought after commodity, Chilingarov believes that there should be "no problem in the Arctic that could not be resolved on the basis of good relations and constructive dialog."⁶⁹⁶

Greenland SAR Exercise

In 2012 Greenland conducted a live, full-scale search and rescue exercise in the Greenland Sea with 1000 personnel from Arctic Nations, including Canada, Denmark, Iceland, Norway, Russia, and USA⁶⁹⁷

Iceland Airborne Surveillance

Canada, Denmark, Norway, and the United States, the four Arctic States within NATO, are among NATO states making periodic contributions to "Airborne surveillance and interception capabilities to meet Iceland's peacetime preparedness needs."⁶⁹⁸ NATO reports that since 2008 it has maintained a periodic presence (usually, three to four weeks, three times a year) of fighter in Keflavik: "The air defense flying training missions over Iceland are conducted with the aircraft in an unarmed configuration in accordance with standard NATO practice. The single exception to this rule is that a onetime capability demonstration is conducted during every deployment. This involves arming and disarming NATO aircraft before and usually after a quick-reaction training "scramble", which is conducted to exercise the air surveillance and control system, and other Icelandic support personnel from Keflavik."

In March 2013 Canada announced that, for a second time, the Royal Canadian Air Force would deploy a detachment of six Canadian CF-18 fighters. The operation was dubbed "Operation Ignition.⁶⁹⁹ When deployed, Canada's Task Force Iceland consists of about 160 Canadian Armed Forces personnel, including a detachment of up to six CF-188 Hornet fighter aircraft and a support element located in the security zone at Keflavik International Airport, about 50 km from Reykjavik, Iceland.⁷⁰⁰

Past deployments include Task Force Iceland 2013 and Task Force Iceland 2011. There are currently no forces deployed on Operation Ignition.⁷⁰¹

⁶⁹² U.S. Naval Forces Europe-Africa/U.S. 6th Fleet Public Affairs, "Frukus 2013 wraps up," Navy News Service, 3 July 2013, http://www.navy.mil

⁶⁹³ Pettersen, Trude, "USA cancels joint exercises with Russia," The Barents Observer, 5 March 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

⁶⁹⁴ Pettersen, Trude, "USA cancels joint exercises with Russia," The Barents Observer, 5 March 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

⁶⁹⁵ "U.S. Navy eyes greater presence in the Arctic," Reuters, 2014, <u>http://www.reuters.com/</u>

⁶⁹⁶ Fonesca, Joseph R., "Report on Rosneft Arctic Projects," Marline Link, 19 December 2014, http://www.marinelink.com

⁶⁹⁷ "Greenland Command/ISCOMGEENLAND: Search and Rescue Exercise Greenland Sea 2012, Final Exercise Report," Island Commander Greenland, 21 August 2012, http://www.institutenorth.org/assets/images/uploads/attachments/SAREX Greenland Sea 2012 Final Exercise Report.pdf

⁶⁹⁸ "Iceland's 'Peacetime Preparedness Needs'," NATO, no date listed, http://www.aco.nato.int/icelands-peacetime-preparedness-needs.aspx.

⁶⁹⁹ "CF-18s to Patrol Iceland's Airspace," Defence Watch, 26 March 2013, http://blogs.ottawacitizen.com

⁷⁰⁰ "Operation Ignition," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 21 November 2014, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

⁷⁰¹ "Operation Ignition," National Defence and the Canadian Armed Forces, 21 November 2014, <u>http://www.forces.gc.ca</u>

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

Joint Tabletop Review for Crystal Serenity's Arctic voyage

An international rescue tabletop exercise was conducted in Iceland April 6-7 2016 to test and evaluate coordinated response procedures to a simulated incident aboard a luxury cruise ship. 56 participants took part in the exercise, including members of the U.S. Coast Guard and Canadian Coast Guard who were heavily involved. According to the Arctic Journal, "The exercise was aimed at strengthening the cooperation and exchange of knowledge between the Arctic cruise industry and SAR service providers, and focused on mass rescue operations relative to potential passenger ship accidents in Arctic waters."⁷⁰²

Operation NANOOK

Operation Nanook is a Canadian-led arctic sovereignty operation. It has been conducted annually since 2007 by Canada, and has also involved international military partners, Canadian federal government departments and agencies, and provincial, territorial, and municipal governments. It typically involves simultaneous activities at sea, on land, and in the air, and the number of personnel has ranged from about 650 to more than 1,250.⁷⁰³

According to CBC in 2016, "Operation Nanook is viewed as the most important for asserting Canadian sovereignty over its northern reaches while giving the military and other federal departments experience operating in the region."⁷⁰⁴

Northern Eagle Naval Exercises

Russia, Norway, and the US have held four annual joint exercises to develop joint manoeuvring and communications capabilities, as well as joint rescue operations. In 2012 the exercises were held in the Norwegian and Barents Seas.⁷⁰⁵

• The 2014 joint exercise Northern Eagle was "cancelled until further notice" after the US cancelled all military-tomilitary cooperation with Russia to protest Russian actions in Ukraine. As of June 2016, the exercise has not restarted.⁷⁰⁶

Exercise Polar Roar

An American-led joint exercise to demonstrate and test their "long-range global-strike capability". In July 2016, it involved 10 different NATO allies⁷⁰⁷ as well as B-52 and B-2 bomber training flights to the Arctic, Northern Pacific, and the Baltic Sea. NORAD reported that Canadian CF-18 aircraft and other American aircraft trained in intercept and safe passage procedures as part of the overall exercise.⁷⁰⁸

Exercise POMOR

Exercise POMOR is a joint Russian-Norwegian annual naval exercise. The purpose of the exercise is described by the Norwegian Armed Forces as follows: "to practice maritime security operations and to further develop the good relationship between the Norwegian and the Russian military."⁷⁰⁹ POMOR 2012 was described by the *Barents Observer*: "This year's exercise will take place on four locations – one in Russia and three in Norwegian waters. The drills will focus on anti-terror and anti-piracy operations, interception of fast-speed boats illegally crossing the state borders, search and rescue operations. The exercise will also include joint manoeuvring, live artillery firing, anti-aircraft defense and detection of submarines. Norwegian coastal rangers and Russian naval infantry are also planned to take part in POMOR-2012."⁷¹⁰

⁷⁰⁷ Swartz Phillip, "Air Force refueling sorties on top of the world: They're 'like an organized chaos'," 7 August 2016, Air Force Times, http://www.airforcetimes.com

⁷¹⁰ Pettersen, Trude, "POMOR-2012 starts in one month," The Barents Observer, 15 April 2012, http://barentsobserver.com

⁷⁰² Association of Arctic Expedition Cruise Operators, "Arctic cruise industry and rescuers participate in joint search and rescue exercise," The Arctic Journal, 17 April 2016, <u>http://arcticjournal.com</u>

⁷⁰³ <u>http://www.cjoc-coic.forces.gc.ca/cont/rec-eng.asp</u>

⁷⁰⁴ Berthiaume, Lee, "Trudeau ends Harpers tradition of attending Arctic military exercise," 29 August 2016, CBC, <u>www.cbc.ca</u>

⁷⁰⁵ "The Russian Navy held joint military exercises with Norway and the US in the Norwegian Sea, 21 August 2012," Arctic Info, 21 August 2012, <u>http://www.arctic-info.com</u>

⁷⁰⁶ Nilsen, Thomas, "Crimea crisis puts Barents naval exercise on hold," The Barents Observer, 14 March 2014, http://barentsobserver.com

⁷⁰⁸ Pugliese, David, "US shows off its strategic muscle with bomber flights to Arctic and Baltic Sea, CF- 18s involved," Ottawa Citizen, 01 August 2016. http://ottawacitizen.com

⁷⁰⁹ http://mil.no/excercises/pomor2011/Pages/default.aspx

Due to Norway suspending military cooperation with Russia, Operation POMOR was cancelled in 2015 and has not occurred since.⁷¹¹

US Air National Guard exercise in Finland

The first instance of US military aircraft using Finnish bases to conduct exercises, approved in November 2015, will occur in May 2016. A wing of F-15 fighter jets from the US Air National Guard will run drills mainly out of Rissala air base in central Finland. Approximately 100 US service personnel and 8 unarmed F-15s will participate in the drills, which are expected to last 2 weeks. Finnish Foreign Minister Soini stated that the request to hold the exercise came from the US and not Finland, yet Finnish Defence Ministry official Mika Varvikko describes the US as "the most important bilateral companion" of Finland's Air Force.⁷¹²

Operation Vigilant Eagle

In 2011 "Russian Federated Air Force, the USAF and Canadian Air Force worked a training exercise that simulated terrorists hijacking a Boeing 757 in the Alaskan region of the North American Aerospace Defense Command. Other aircraft involved in the exercise were F-22's that were involved in interception and investigation. On the Russian side the aircraft was intercepted and investigated by three SU-27 jet fighters, a MIG-31, and two more SU-27's. The three countries worked together on the air terrorism exercise. Operation Vigilant Eagle is also an American law-enforcement effort headed by the FBI aimed at preventing political violence by "lone wolf" terrorists. The operation was first mentioned in the Wall Street Journal in April 2009."⁷¹³ Pugliese describes an Operation Vigilant Eagle exercise in 2010 as a joint exercise by Canada, Russia, and the US held in 2010, that involved military personnel operating from command centres in Russia and the US and fighter aircraft to follow and intercept a 'hijacked' plane.⁷¹⁴

 Operation Vigilant Eagle suspended in 2014 due to tensions between Canada/US and Russia and, as of June 2016, has not restarted.⁷¹⁵

Operation Vigilant Shield 17

Vigilant Shield is an annual Canada-US exercise to practice joint responses to various scenarios positing threats to North America, including in the high Arctic. Most recently, from October 17-2 2016, the exercise involved deployment of Canadian CF-18s to Inuvik and American F-15s to Yellowknife.⁷¹⁶ According to the Canadian DND, "The exercise provides valuable and concrete field training, involving multiple NORAD regions and the deployment of air assets to locations in northern Canada and the United States, allowing NORAD to maintain a credible, flexible, and ready capability to respond to a variety of threats and situations."⁷¹⁷

⁷¹¹ Pettersen, Trude, "Norway suspends military cooperation with Russia until end of 2015," RCI Net, 12 December 2014, http://www.rcinet.ca

⁷¹² Staalesen, Atle, "U.S. Fighter Jets over Finnish Laplands," The Barents Observer, 9 February 2016, http://www.thebarentsobserver.com

⁷¹³ "OPERATION VIGILANT EAGLE: Air Terror Drill Intercepts, Investigates Hijacking in Simulated Air Terrorist Operation", GlobalConflictMaps.Com, 3 January 2011. <u>http://www.globalconflictmaps.com</u>

⁷¹⁴ Pugliese, David, "Selling Canada on the need for fighters," Ottawa Citizen, 12 December 2010, http://www2.canada.com

⁷¹⁵ Carpenter, Dan, "Joint Russia-U.S. Military Training Mission on Hold," KTUU-TV, 9 September 2016, http://www.ktuu.com

⁷¹⁶ Thatcher, Chris, "NORAD exercise puts defence of norther airspace to the test," SKIES, 26 October 2016, <u>http://skiesmag.com</u>

⁷¹⁷ Canadian Department of National Defence, "NORAD begins annual Vigilant Shield exercise," Government of Canada, 17 October 2016, http://news.gc.ca

ARCTIC FORUMS

Besides the **Arctic Council**, the core regional Arctic forum with a Secretariat in Tromsø, Norway, there is a growing number of forums (some are listed here)⁷¹⁸ involving Arctic populations at state, sub-state, and non-governmental levels. They collectively represent a significant intent to cooperate, and while most neither directly nor indirectly address traditional, or hard, security issues (the exception is the meetings of the Chiefs of Defence), they do all have the potential to contribute to a pan-Arctic climate of mutuality and interconnectedness which in turn does have huge implications for security. And while there may be hints of forum envy emerging, the key reality is that these various forums reflect a fundamental recognition that the Arctic is indeed a place that basically rewards cooperation.⁷¹⁹

- Iqaluit hosted the 2015 Arctic Council ministerial gathering in April 2015. The meeting set the objectives for 2015-2017.
- The next ministerial gathering occurred in May 2017 in Fairbanks, Alaska, where the United States handed the council chairmanship over to Finland, who presented its action plan priorities for 2017-2019."⁷²⁰
- Canada's position as the chair of the Arctic Council came to an end in 2015.⁷²¹

The Arctic Circle⁷²²

"The Arctic Circle is designed to increase participation in Arctic dialogue and strengthen the international focus on the future of the Arctic. Participating organizations will maintain their full institutional independence, identity and decision-making abilities."

If the Arctic Five is criticized for being non-inclusive, the "Arctic Circle" is the opposite, casting a wide net for the purpose of facilitating dialogue in one large "open tent" among a broad range "of global decision-makers from all sectors, including political and business leaders, indigenous representatives, nongovernmental and environmental representatives, policy and thought leaders, scientists, experts, activists, students and media." Led by Iceland, the "Arctic Circle aims to support, complement and extend the reach of the work of the Arctic Council by facilitating a broad exchange of ideas and information at an open gathering held in mid-October of each year."

According to Iceland President Olafur Grimsson, "China, India, Singapore and other countries far from the Arctic Circle could be part of a new global forum to widen the discussion about the fate of the planet's Far North."⁷²³

The 2016 Assembly was held October 7-9 in Reykjavik, Iceland⁷²⁴ and the 2017 Assembly will take place in Reykjavik from October 13-15.⁷²⁵

Arctic Coast Guard Forum

- Officially established in October 2015⁷²⁶
- "...an operationally-focused, consensus-based organization with the purpose of leveraging collective resources to foster safe, secure and environmentally responsible maritime activity in the Arctic. Membership includes Canada, Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway, Sweden, the Russian Federation and the United States."⁷²⁷
- The heads of the eight Arctic nations' coast guards met in June 2016,⁷²⁸ and again in March 2017,⁷²⁹ to deepen their collaboration in the north.

⁷¹⁸ Exner-Pirot, Heather, "The Arctic Circle, Wayne Gretzky, and the Future of Arctic Cooperation," Eye on the Arctic, 19 April 2013, <u>http://eyeonthearctic.rcinet.ca</u>

⁷¹⁹ "NATO has 'no intention' to up presence in Arctic," The Local: Norway's News in English, 8 May 2013. <u>http://www.thelocal.no</u>

⁷²⁰ "Arctic Council meets in Alaska to discuss regional cooperation," The Arctic, 9 March 2017, http://arctic.ru/

⁷²¹ "2015 Arctic Council ministerial meeting," Global Affairs Canada, 4 November 2015, <u>http://www.international.gc.ca</u>

⁷²² Arctic Circle - <u>http://www.thearcticcircle.org</u>

⁷²³ Zabarenko, Deborah, "China, India, Singapore could join new Arctic Circle forum," Reuters, 16 April 2013, http://in.reuters.com

⁷²⁴ "About," Arctic Circle, last modified 9 June 2016, <u>http://arcticcircle.org</u>

⁷²⁵ "2017 Arctic Circle Assembly", UArctic, no date listed, http://www.uarctic.org/

⁷²⁶ Braynard, Katie, "Establishment of the Arctic Coast Guard Forum," Coast Guard Compass, 30 October 2015, http://coastguard.dodlive.mil

⁷²⁷ Braynard, Katie, "Establishment of the Arctic Coast Guard Forum," Coast Guard Compass, 30 October 2015, http://coastguard.dodlive.mil

⁷²⁸ Sevunts, Levon, "Arctic nations deepen Coast Guard cooperation," RCINet, 10 June 2016, http://www.rcinet.ca

⁷²⁹ "Arctic coast guard services coordinate procedures for cooperative maritime activity," The Arctic, 23 March 2017, <u>http://arctic.ru</u>

- In March 2017, the heads of coast guard services met to sign a joint agreement outlining shared protocols for emergency maritime response and combined operations in the Arctic.⁷³⁰
- "The recently formed Arctic Coast Guard Forum will hold a multi-lateral search-and-rescue (SAR) exercise in September 2017, Admiral Paul Zukunft, commandant of the US Coast Guard (USCG) told reporters on 12 April 2017..."⁷³¹

Arctic Economic Council

"The Arctic Economic Council is an independent organization that facilitates Arctic business-to-business activities and responsible economic development through the sharing of best practices, technological solutions, standards and other information. The Arctic Economic Council held its first meeting in Iqaluit, Nunavut on September 2-3, 2014."⁷³²

The Arctic Council "recognizes the central role of business in the sustainable development of the Arctic". As a result, the Arctic Economic Council was formed, which was previously associated with the Task Force to Facilitate the Circumpolar Business Forum (TFCBF). The Arctic Economic Council will focus on the following:

- foster business development in the Arctic,
- engage in deeper circumpolar cooperation, and provide a business perspective to the work of the Arctic Council.⁷³³

The AEC has "three thematic working groups on Arctic Stewardship, Responsible Resource Development and Maritime Transportation. Additionally, AEC representatives have delivered more than 40 outreach presentations around the world and met with business leaders seeking partnerships to promote responsible economic development in the Arctic" said Canadian Tom Paddon, the outgoing Chair of the AEC."⁷³⁴

Arctic Five

The five Arctic coastal states (Canada, Greenland, Norway, Russia, United States) met in Illulisat in 2008 to jointly declare that "the law of the sea provides for important rights and obligations concerning the delineation of the outer limits of the continental shelf, the protection of the marine environment, including ice-covered areas, freedom of navigation, marine scientific research, and other uses of the sea." Their declaration included a "commit[ment] to this legal framework and to the orderly settlement of any possible overlapping claims."⁷³⁵ A second meeting, in Canada, in Chelsea in 2010,⁷³⁶ reiterated the commitment to the peaceful settlement of overlapping claims in the Arctic and pledged cooperation and, as the Canadian hosts reported, "discussed the value of having our national agencies responsible for public safety issues consider these and other potential challenges in the Arctic and explore ways Arctic Ocean coastal states can share information and strengthen cooperation, consistent with national law."

Whether the group will be formalized as the Arctic G5, as the *Barents Observer* put it,⁷³⁷ remains to be seen, given the criticisms it has faced for excluding the other three Arctic states and representatives of indigenous peoples. But consultation among the five, is likely to continue for the simple reason, as the Russian Foreign Minister said in his summary of the Chelsea meeting, the Arctic Ocean states have a "special responsibility...for the state of affairs in the region."⁷³⁸Arctic Defence Chiefs

The Defence Chiefs of the eight Arctic Council states have begun to meet annually to share information their respective Arctic military capabilities, especially related to capacity in support civilian search and rescue and other missions. The first meeting was held in April 2012 in Goose Bay, Labrador and hosted by the Canadian Chief of Defence Staff. "The primary objective of the two-day conference was to build upon Canada's existing defence relationships in the region by offering attendees an informal opportunity to conduct direct multi- and bilateral discussions focused on Northern issues.

⁷³⁷ Staalesen, Atle, "Formalizing the Arctic G5," The Barents Observer, 30 March 2010, <u>http://barentsobserver.com</u>

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁷³⁰ "Arctic coast guard services coordinate procedures for cooperative maritime activity," The Arctic, 23 March 2017, <u>http://arctic.ru</u>

⁷³¹ Torruella, Anika, "Arctic Coast Guard Forum to hold search-and-rescue exercises," IHS Jane's Navy International, 13 April 2017, <u>http://www.janes.com/</u> ⁷³² "Backgrounder," Arctic Economic Council, last modified in 2016, <u>http://arcticeconomiccouncil.com</u>

⁷³³ Arctic Economic Council," Arctic Council, 28 January 2014, <u>http://www.arctic-council.org</u>

⁷³⁴ "Arctic Economic Council selects new Chair and establishes Secretariat," Arctic Economic Council, 23 April 2015, http://arcticeconomiccouncil.com

⁷³⁵ "The Ilulissat Declaration", Arctic Ocean Conference, 27 – 29 MAY 2008, <u>http://www.oceanlaw.org/downloads/arctic/Ilulissat_Declaration.pdf</u>

⁷³⁶ Cannon, Lawrence, "Arctic Ocean Coastal States meeting, Chelsea: Summary," Foreign Affairs Minister of Canada, 29 March 2010, <u>http://www.arctic-report.net/wp-content/uploads/2012/01/2010.03-Arctic-Ocean-Coastal-States-meeting-Chelsea-Canada-March-2010.pdf</u>

⁷³⁸ "Outcome of the Second Ministerial Meeting of the Arctic Ocean Coastal States, Chelsea, Canada, Press Release," The Embassy of the Russian Federation in Canada 1 April 2010, <u>http://www.rusembassy.ca</u>

Topics discussed included the sharing of knowledge and expertise about dealing with regional operational challenges posed by geography, climate and vast distances; responsible stewardship; and support to civil authorities."⁷³⁹

They met again in June 2013 in Ilulissat, Greenland. According to defensenews.com,⁷⁴⁰ the Defence Chiefs agreed to "strengthen cooperation in marine surveillance and expand joint military exercises. "Moreover, defense commanders agreed to identify and appraise the military and civilian capabilities in each country that can be used to support civilian missions in the Arctic over the next 12 months. "The new strategy, following a two-day meeting of defense commanders in the coastal Greenland town of Ilulissat that ended June 12, will focus on how the eight Arctic nations can bolster defense and security cooperation in the Arctic and how military resources can be better deployed to support civilian needs across borders."

In addition:

"A consensus was reached by the military chiefs of Denmark, the US, Canada, Russia, Finland, Sweden, Norway and Iceland to work toward a common goal in which all countries adhere to the Maritime Safety & Security Information System (MSSIS), a near real-time data collection and distribution network operated by 60 countries that shares information sourced from the marine tracking Automatic Identification System, coastal radar units and other maritimerelated monitoring systems.

"MSSIS-based cooperation would mean the eight militaries could operate from a level playing field of knowledge and work with a common situational picture when collaborating on cross-border tasks in the Arctic."

Arctic Frontiers⁷⁴¹

According to its website, "Arctic Frontiers is organised as an independent network and a leading meeting place for panarctic issues." Established in 2006, its mission is:

- To increase attention and commitment to sustainable development of the Arctic, particularly from the corporate sector.
- To build new partnerships across sectors, generations and ethnic groups,
- To offer a forum for delivering state of the art science to the public and at the same time bringing the sociological, political and economic framework for management of the Arctic to the attention of science.
- To provide open access to everyone to the annual conferences through a live broadcast on the Internet, simultaneously interpreted in English and in Russian.
- To develop new approaches and solutions to environmental challenges caused by human activity.

The Arctic Frontiers secretariat is located in Tromsø, Norway and is responsible for day-to-day operations and for the organisation of the annual conference. The next conference will be in January 2017.⁷⁴²

International Cooperative Engagement Program for Polar Research (ICE-PPR⁷⁴³

"Defense officials and scientists from partner nations with Arctic and Antarctic interests, including the United States, Canada, Denmark, Finland, Norway and Sweden met in Helsinki to advance collaboration on polar research that could prove pivotal to not only scientific understandings but also U.S. and international naval operations."

"The meeting answers the recent call from Chief of Naval Operations Adm. John Richardson to rapidly accelerate learning and provide new capabilities to the fleet. The "Design for Maintaining Maritime Superiority" specifically calls for expanding and strengthening the Navy and Marine Corps network of partners, including a directive to "prioritize key international partnerships through information sharing, interoperability initiatives and combined operations."

This meeting represents "a first-ever gathering of senior defense officials to coordinate science and technology research in high latitudes."

⁷³⁹ "General Natynczyk and fellow northern Chiefs of Defence discuss shared Arctic interests", DND News Release, 13 April, 2012, http://www.forces.gc.ca

⁷⁴⁰ O'Dwyer, Gerard, "Arctic Nations Set Cooperation Guidelines," Defence News, 27 June 2013, http://www.defensenews.com

⁷⁴¹ Arctic Frontiers - <u>http://www.arcticfrontiers.com</u>

⁷⁴² "Home," Arctic Frontiers, last modified 9 June 2016, arcticfrontiers.com

⁷⁴³ Haun, Eric, "Senior Defence Officials discuss Polar priorities," MarineLink.com, 1 March 2016, http://www.marinelink.com

Northern Forum⁷⁴⁴

Founded⁷⁴⁵ in 1991, the Northern Forum's mission is "to improve the quality of life of Northern peoples by providing Northern regional leaders a means to share their knowledge and experience in addressing common challenges; and to support sustainable development and the implementation of cooperative socio-economic initiatives among Northern regions and through international fora."

"Membership is available to regional and sub-regional governments, municipalities (where there is no regional entity) businesses, non-profit and non-governmental organizations," and "member regions are represented by their Governor, Premier, President or highest executive, or his/her duly mandated delegate." Its Secretariat is in Russia and the corporate office is in the United States. An extensive website points to a wide variety of programs and activities.

Circumpolar Military Facilities of the Arctic Five – last updated: September 2017 Ernie Regehr, O.C., and Michelle Jackett, M.A.

⁷⁴⁴ Northern Forum - <u>http://www.northernforum.org</u>

^{74s} "The founding members included: Yukon Territory, Canada; Heilongjiang Province, Peoples' Republic of China; Lapland, Finland; Hokkaido, Japan; Dornod, Mongolia; Trondelag and Tromso, Norway; Chukotka Autonomous Okrug, Kamchatka Oblast', Magadan Oblast', Russian Federation; Republic of Korea; and the state of Alaska, U.S.A."

OTHER PROJECTS INVOLVING THE ARCTIC

Arctic Fibre⁷⁴⁶

"Arctic Fibre is a fibre optic telecommunications project developing one of the largest subsea cable networks in the world. The cable connects Asia to Western Europe via the southern portion of the North West Passage through the Canadian and Alaskan Arctic. In addition to providing transoceanic connectivity directly between the two continents, Arctic Fibre will be bringing affordable high speed Internet Access to the Arctic for the first time where bandwidth is currently limited. The introduction of high speed Internet will enable Arctic governments to deliver improved health and education services more cost effectively, spur economic development and empower local businesses, and allow consumers to access video and high speed applications."

China and the Arctic

China is one of the most important rising powers, displaying an increasing interest in the Arctic. Chinese Read Admiral Yin Zhuo said, ""The Arctic belongs to all the people around the world as no nation has sovereignty over it..." China has an interest in Greenland's mineral resources, exploration and research of Arctic ('scientific diplomacy'), and the Northern Sea Route.⁷⁴⁷

March 2016: During the 2015 Arctic Circle conference, Wang Yi, China's foreign minister, delivered a message via live stream emphasising China's felt investment as a "near-Arctic state" and its strong historical ties as a result of the Svalbard Treaty in 1925.⁷⁴⁸

June 2017: A new paper co-released by China's National Development and Reform Commission and the State Oceanic Administration outlines how the Arctic's Northern Sea Route may be increasingly considered a crucial part of China's "Belt and Road" trade initiative.⁷⁴⁹

Chinese Icebreaker Xuelong

Chinese icebreaker Xuelong, or Snow Dragon, embarked on its sixth expedition in July 2014. "It is estimated that the vessel, capable of breaking ice 1.2 meters thick, will travel over 11,057 nautical miles during its 76-day voyage, said Qu Tanzhou, the team leader and head of the Chinese Arctic and Antarctic Administration."⁷⁵⁰ At the moment the Snow Dragon is the only Chinese icebreaker although, "bidding for construction of China's second polar research ship will start by the end of April, says Hu Keyi, technical director at Jiangnan Shipyard. The ship's estimated budget will be more than one billion yuan (\$154 million) and construction is expected to take about two years."⁷⁵¹

July 2017: The Xuelong began its eighth arctic journey this week. "The expedition will be the first Chinese attempt to traverse the Northwest Passage. Researchers on board the Xuelong, or Snow Dragon, plan to study the acidification of the Arctic Ocean, as well as the presence of microplastics in Arctic waters, Shanghai Daily reports... This year's route will see it depart Shanghai, traverse the Northeast Passage and then continue on to the Northwest Passage."⁷⁵²

European Union: "France wants EU Empire to Expand into Arctic Circle"⁷⁵³

"France is urging the European Union to seize influence on the Arctic Council, the organisation that brings together the eight nations with sovereign territory in the resource-rich Arctic region. However, Russia, which along with the United States and Canada dominates the council, is unlikely to tolerate any attempt by France or the EU to extend their bureaucratic reach over joint projects by the eight.... France nevertheless remains determined to urge the EU to push its imperial boundaries right into the Arctic with the dubious claim that 'five of the eight permanent members [of the Arctic Council] are European countries.'"

⁷⁵³ Synon, M.E., "France wants EU Empire to Expand into Arctic Circle," Breibart News Network, 18 July 2014, <u>http://www.breitbart.com</u>

⁷⁴⁶ Arctic Fibre - <u>http://arcticfibre.com/</u>

⁷⁴⁷ Humberto Zorro Cuervo, Mario, "China and the Arctic: The Ice Dragon," The News Hub, 29 November 2014, https://www.the-newshub.com

⁷⁴⁸ Kjetland Fjeldsbø, Tore Andre, "Peripheral Kingdom," The Arctic Journal, 2 December 2015, <u>http://arcticjournal.com</u>

⁷⁴⁹ Lanteigne, Marc, "China loops the Arctic into its Belt and Road vision," News Deeply, 30 June 2017, https://www.newsdeeply.com

⁷⁵⁰ "Chinese icebreaker heads for 6th Arctic expedition," Xinhuanet News, 11 July 2014, <u>http://news.xinhuanet.com</u>

⁷⁵¹ "Bidding to start on China's new ice breaker," Maritime Executive, 13 March 2016, http://www.maritime-executive.com

⁷⁵² "Executive Summary for July 21st," Arctic Deeply, 21 July 2017, https://www.newsdeeply.com/arctic

In 2016, the European Commission released *An Integrated EU Policy for the Arctic,* which "contains 39 actions to further develop the EU's policy towards the Arctic".⁷⁵⁴

IMO: Adopts Polar Code Safety Requirements

The International Maritime Organization (IMO) "finalized the Polar Code and adopted amendments to the International Convention for the Safety of Life at Sea, or the SOLAS, which will create mandatory safety requirements for ships operating in Arctic and Antarctic waters." The code will be in effect January 1, 2017 and cover topics such as training, certification, navigation, and operational assessments.⁷⁵⁵

IMO Arctic Training

The International Maritime Organization (IMO) has finalized training requirements for mariners traveling to the Arctic and Antarctic. This means that "masters and navigating officers must complete special training in order to navigate ships in ice."⁷⁵⁶

Interactive Arctic Risk Map

DNV GL has developed an interactive Arctic risk. "The map presents multiple dimensions, such as the seasonal distribution of ice, metocean (physical environment) conditions, sea-ice concentrations, biological assets, shipping traffic and oil and gas resources, in a user-friendly, single layout. It also includes a Safety and Operability Index, showing the variation in different factors that impact the risk level depending on the season and their location in the Arctic. In addition, a location- and season-specific index has been developed showing the environmental vulnerability of marine resources with respect to oil spill as an external stressor."⁷⁵⁷

Arctic Risk Map - http://www.dnvgl.com/technology-innovation/strategic-projects/arctic/resources.aspx

Japan and the Arctic:

Japan released its first Arctic Policy in October 2015, which advocated a key role in the future formulation of international rules for Arctic development.⁷⁵⁸

Japan: Independent underwater vehicle Urashima developed by JAMSTEC⁷⁵⁹

The Japanese government "will launch a project to develop an autonomous underwater vehicle capable of collecting oceanographic data on ice distribution in the Arctic Ocean, The Yomiuri Shimbun learned Friday. The data will be used to ensure the safe passage of vessels carrying liquefied natural gas and other energy resources from Russia to Japan through the ice-covered Arctic Ocean....The Arctic Ocean route has the potential to be used for the transport of oil from Siberia in Russia, and for the export and import of automobile parts via Rotterdam, where leading European ports are located."

Robot Army to Study the Arctic

The U.S. Navy funds robots to be used to study the Arctic Ocean. The robot, a seaglider, can "surf the ocean currents for up to a year at a time." For example, the robots are used to study how quickly the ice is melting, water temperature, and general changing conditions. This will help the Navy to prepare its crew and equipment, with the plan to be fully operational in the Arctic by 2030.⁷⁶⁰

⁷⁵⁴ "An Integrated EU Policy for the Arctic," European Commission, 27 April 2016, <u>http://europa.eu</u>

⁷⁵⁵ Keefe, Joseph, "IMO adopts Polar Code Safety Requierements," Marline Link, 9 December 2014, http://www.marinelink.com

⁷⁵⁶ Fonesca, Joseph R., "IMO Training for Mariners in the Arctic Finalised," MarineLink, 10 February 2015, <u>www.marinelink.com</u>

⁷⁵⁷ Turander, Elinor, "DNV GL launches interactive Arctic Risk Map to communicate region's complex risk picture," DNVGL, 26 August 2014, http://www.dnvgl.com/

⁷⁵⁸ Lakshmi, Aiswarya, "Japan, Finland Cooperation for Arctic," MarineLink.com, 14 March 2016, www.marinelink.com

⁷⁵⁹ "Unmanned Vessel to Explore Arctic," The Japan News, 11 July 2014, http://the-japan-news.com/

⁷⁶⁰ Brumfiel, Geoff, "Navy Funds A Small Robot Army To Study The Arctic," NPR, 15 February 2015, <u>www.npr.org</u>